BASIC COURSE in Spoken Nepali

Tika B. Karki
Chij K. Shrestha

BASIC COURSE in Spoken Nepali

Tika B. Karki
Chij K. Shrestha

PREFACE

This book is written with the needs of Peace Corps volunteers of Nepal in mind but is equally useful for any foreigners who want to learn Nepali. The material presented here is based on spoken Nepali. Effort has been made to make the material both linguistically and culturally authentic as far as possible. However, the regional variances (Nepali spoken in Eastern vs. Western parts of Nepal) in spoken Nepali as well as in grammar have caused some difficulty in such an effort. In such cases, we have chosen the ones, which, in our experience and knowledge, have appeared to be most common. The differences between the native Nepali speakers (Brahmins, Kshatrys, etc.) and those who speak it as a second language (Gurungs, Newars, Magars, Rais etc.) cause another set of problems. The Nepali spoken by the first group may be considered as correct but the latter represents the majority of the speakers in the country. The material in this book will reflect the influence of this majority group. So while we accept that some of the grammatical patterns used here are not correct in the purest sense, we can claim that this is the way the majority of people do actually speak and consequently most important for the foreigners to learn.

The book contains forty lessons. Each lesson is supplemented by grammar notes and explanations of the usage of different language items that may cause confusion for the learners. Each lesson also includes a list of new words with its English equivalents and conjugation of verbs whenever necessary. The first fifteen lessons are written in Roman Script. The English translation of the new structures are also included along side the Romanized Nepali. This is done with those language learners in mind who may try to learn the language on their own. These people will find the introduction to the Nepali sounds and pronounciation practice chart in the beginning of the book

and an extensive vocabulary list arranged under different topical headings at the end very useful in their attempt at self learning.

Our years of experience in languge teaching and our long association with Peace Corps Nepal as Trainers and Language Specialists have culminated in the production of this book. We have received very valuable comments and criticisms from our fellow trainers and colleagues at different times. More valuable have been the suggestions received from the trainees and volunters who, as learners using this material, have had better insight into the effectiveness of it. We have attempted to incorporate all these ideas in designing the basic format of the book and chosing the contents as far as possible. Hence we would like to express our appreciation to all of them. Our special thanks also go to Miss Jane Abbot, Peace Corps Volunteer teacher of Tribhuvan University, for going through the grammar notes and providing us with helpful suggestions. We are also grateful to Mr. Krishna Lall Bhai Pradhan whose work in this field has aided our present effort considerably.

–The Authors

Preface to this Edition

The present edition contains a number of corrections and additions. An entire new section has been added on Reading and Writing. This was done with a view to meeting the needs of those who wish to learn how to read and write. Also added are (i) some Nepali idioms (ii) advervial expressions, and (iii) common Nepali proverbs which we hope the learners will find useful.

Every effort has been made to eliminate the typographical errors which appeared in the second edition.

We have received valuable suggestions from many learners who have used this book. We would like to express our grateful thanks to all of them.

Tika B. Karki
Chij K. Shrestha

CONTENTS

LESSON	FOCUS – TOPICAL/GRAMMATICAL	PAGE
	An Introduction to the Nepali Sound System	(i)
	Pronunciation Practice	(xi)
1.	**ho, chha** – Verb '*To be*' '...**eko** – Past Tense; '...**nos.** –polite command forms.	1
2.	Continuation of Lesson One	8
3.	Continuation of Lesson One & Two	12
4.	'...ne' – Present tense **kahãã jaane ?** *where are you going ?*	18
5.	**Kati parchha ?** – *How much does it cost ?* **paainchha ?** *–Is it avaiblable ? Shopping.*	24
6.	Shopping continued.	28
7.	'...**dai.** form – present continuous (*I am going*).	31
8.	Simple Present (*I go; He writes*). Habitual present (*I sleep at ten.*) Time of the day.	35
9.	Simple past (*I went; you slept*)	47
10.	Feelings (*I felt tired; He felt thirsty*)	44
11.	Review and past Tense of verb 'to be (*I was; you were*); days of the week.	40
12.	Parts of body; Present Tense of verb 'to be' (*I am, you are*)	56
13.	Talking about family members & review	60
14.	Likes and dislikes (*I like Pokhara; I dont' like raksi*)	64
15.	Possession (*I have; He has etc.*)	69
16.	More adjectives and post positions (from, *to, until etc.*)	72
17.	'ko **laagi.** – *for* ... (purpose) *A pen is to write with.*	
18.	Directions (*Ilam is in the east*)	80

17. Use of **'le.** as an agent.
ma haatle Khaanchhu – *I eat with my hand.* 85
20. Barganining; '*to be*' verb in Past reinforced. 89
Comparisons (*Ram is taller than shyam*) 75
22 '. **era.** '...**epachhi.** & '...**i, ma ghara gacra sutchhu** (*I'll sleep after going home*) 100
23. Present perfect Tense – (*I have gone there*) 106
24. '..**daa kheri,** – while, when.
amerikaa baaTa aaũdaakheri mailẽ reDiyo Kinẽ (*I bought a radio while coming from America*). 112
25. Impersonal verbs (**dekhincha** – *is seen;* **suninchha** – *is heard*) 117
26. Past habitual **(ma raksi khaanthẽ** – *I used to drink*) 122
27. '...**bhandaa pahile.** – before...ing (*Where were you before coming to Nepal?*) 126
28. Past perfect (*I had gone; you had written a letter*) 130
29. Past Progressive (*I was going: you were writing*) 136
30. All forms of present and Past progressive. 141
31. Conditional clause **'bhane.** – *if*
If I have headache, I take aspirins. 145
32. **jahile pani** – *any time* : **jataapani** – *anywhere* 149
33. **eko hunaale** – Because clause.
phursad nabhaekole ma aaina – *I didn't come because I didn't have free time.* 153
34. Relative clause.
The school where he teaches is in a village near Pokhara. 158
35. Though, even if clause.
Even though my watch is old, it keeps good time. 162
36. Passives.
Nepal is spoken in all government offices. 168

37. Reported speech.
Ram said he was not feeling well to day. 171
38. **na aaunjel, bittikai**
I went to school right after eating. 178
39. **rahechha.** 182
I found Pokhara very beautiful.
40. Conditional clause. **eko bhae.**
I would have gone to Pokhara if you had not come. 189
41. Some Nepali Idioms 189
42. Adverbial Expressions 192
43. Common Nepali Proverbs 194
44. Glossary (Words used in this book) 177
45. Weight, Measurement etc. 209
46. Particles 210
47. Numerals 211
49. Ordinal Numbers 213
50. General Vocabulary 214
51. Conjugation Tables 230
52. Reading and Writing Section. 237
53. References 266

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE NEPALI SOUND SYSTEM

The Nepali alphabet is arranged in the following order. To use a Nepali-English Dictionary, this order must be memorized. The Roman letters used in this book are given with their equivalents in DEVNAGARI SCRIPT.

VOWELS

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
a	aa	i	i	u	u	e	ai	o	au

CONSONANTS

क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
k	kh	g	gh	ng
च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
ch	chh	j	jh	n
ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
T	Th	D	Dh	n
त	थ	द	ध	न
t	th	d	dh	n
प	फ	ब	भ	म
p	ph	b	bh	m
य	र	ल	व	श
y	r	l	w	sh
ष	स	ह	क्ष	त्र
sh	s	h	ksh	tra
		ज्ञ		
		gyn		

NOTE

1) The vowels i and u have two forms in written Nepali-short form : (इ उ) and long form : (ई ऊ). However, since no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, they will be treated as the same in this book.

2) There are three different "s" sounds in written Nepali' Again, in common spoken Nepali, they are all pronounced as 'स'

3) All Nepali vowel sounds have nasalized forms.

A brief guide to the production of the Nepali Sounds.

VOWEL–

1. अ (a)– It is a short, mid-central vowel similar to the first vowel in the English word 'about'. In its articulation, the opening between the jaws is narrow and the lips are rounded.

अब	अब	(aba)	now	दस	(das) — ten
असल	असल	(asal)	good	उठ	(uTha) — stand up !

2. आ (aa) – It is a long, low, unsounded vowel similar to the 'a' sound in the English word "father". In its articulation, the middle of the tongue is slighty raised, the opening between the jaws is medium to wide, and the lips are not rounded.

आमा	(aamaa)	— mother	न आउ	(na aau)	— don't come !
आगो	(aago)	— fire	जरा	(jaraa)	— root

3. इ (i) – is a short, high front,unrounded vowel, close but not similar to the English vowel (i) in 'fit'. In order to produce this vowel, the tip of the tongue should be raised toward the hard palate.

इनार	(inaar)	— well	गीत	(git)	— song
इन्द्र	(indra)	— the god of rain	पनि	(pani)	—also

4. ई (i)– long but produced the same way (i) is.(Although no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, those letters may have a different meaning when written differently).

ईश्वर	(iswar)	God	दिदी	(didi)	–elder sister
पानी	(paani)	— water	बहिनी	(bahini)	younger sister

ई (i) Long — in contrast of short इ (i)
तीर (tir) — arrow तिर (tira) – towards

5. उ (u) – is a short, high back, rounded vowel, very close to the vowel in the English word 'put'.

उठ (uTha) — stand up !
बाउन्न (baaunna) — fifty-two
जाउ (jaau) — go !

6. ऊ (u) – is long but produced the same as (u) is.

ऊन (un) – wool
ठूलो (Thulo) – big
फूल (phul) — flower

7. ए (e) – is long, high-mid, front, unrounded vowel and the tongue is slightly raised in its articulation.

एक (ek) – one खाएकोछु (khaaeho chhu)—
गए (gae) – they went. I have eaten.

8. ऐ (ai) – is a low-mid, front, unrounded dipthong sound which is a combination of (a) and (i), The first sound is shorter than the other.

ऐना (aina) – looking glass बजै (bajai) – grandmother
सबै (sabai) – all मकै (makai) – corn
आजै (aajai) – to-day (emphatic) ऐठन (aiThan) – nightmare

9. ओ (o) – is long, high-mid, back rounded vowel.

ओत (ot) – shelter
फोहोर (phohor) – dirty
बाटो (baaTo) – road

10. औ (au – is a long, low-mid, back and rounded diphthong sound–a combination of अ and उ).

औलो	(aulo) – malaria	औषधी	(ausadhi) – medicine
थियौ	(thiyau) – you were	कौवा	(kauwaa) crow
जौ	(jau) – barley		

CONSONANTS

Nepali has thirty three consonant sounds twenty-five of which are divided into five broad categories according to the place in the mouth in which they are articulated.

1. Velar consonants	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	k	kh	g	gh	ng
2. Palatal consonants	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	ch	chh	ja	jha	n
3. Retroflex consonants	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	T	Th	D	Dh	n
4. Dental Consonants	त	थ	द	ध	न
	t	th	d	dh	n
5. Bi-labial consonants	प	फ	व	भ	म
	p	ph	b	bh	m

1. Velar Consonant – sounds which are articulated at the soft part of the palate (velum) located above the root of the tongue, are called velar sounds. In the articulation of these sounds the back of the tongue touches the soft palate and there is a complete closure of the air passage.

1.1 क (k) – is an unvociced, non-asprirate consonant. It's close equivalent sound in English is 'k' as in 'kite'.

कलम	(kalam)	— pen	नक्कल	(nahkal)	– copy
छाक	(chaak)	— food for one meal.			

1.2 ख (kh) – is the aspirated form of 'k'; While pronouncing 'ख', a strong release of breath is noticed.

खानु	(khaanu)	– to eat	पर्खनु	(parkhanu) – to wait
लेख	(lehh)	– article		

1.3 ग (g) – a voiced counterpart of क (k)

गन	(gana)	– count	पागल	(paagal) – insane
काग	(kaag)	– crow		

1.4 घ (gh) – is a voiced counterpart of 'ख' and the aspirated form of 'ग'.

घर	(ghar)	house
उघार्नु	(ughaarnu)	– to open
बाघ	(baagh)	– tiger

1.5 ङ (ng) – is voiced and nasal. It usually occurs in the middle and final positions only. It is similar to the "ng" sound in the English words 'finger', 'song' except that the 'g' part is not pronounced.

नङ	(nang)	– finger or toe nail
रङ	(rang)	– merriment, color
टाङ्गो	(Taango)	– a long stick

2. PALATAL CONSONANTS – The roof of the mouth is called the palate. Sounds articulated at the hard palate are called palatal sounds. In the articulation of these sounds, the middle of the tongue touches the palate and the breath passes from both sides of the tongue.

2.1 च (ch) – is an unvoiced and non-aspirated palatal consonant. Its closset English equivalent (but not exactly the same) is the 'ch' sound in 'church'.

चार – (chaar) – four वचन – bachan – word
चम्चा – (chamchhaa) – spoon

2.2 छ (chh) – is a vioiceless aspirated counterpart of (ch). It has no equivalent in English.

छ – (chha) – six
कान्छी – (kaanchhi) – youngest sister, daughter
माछा – (maachhaa) – fish

2.3 ज (j) – It is a voiced, unaspirated palatal sound.

जरा (jaraa) root
आज (aaja) – to-day
भजन (bhajan) – hymn, song of worship

2.4 झ (jh) – is an aspirated counterpart of (J).

झूठो (jhuTho) – lie
बुझ्नु (bujhnu) – to understand
साझा (saajhaa) – partnership

2.5 ञ (n) – is a nasalized palatal sound. It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

3. Retroflex consonants–sounds produced with the tip of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity so as to come in contact with the highest part of the roof, are called Retroflex sounds.

3.1 ट (T) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.

टाउको (Taauko) – head घटाउ (ghaTaau) – subtract !
केटा केटी (keTaa keTi) – children

3.2 ठ (Th) – is an unvoiced aspirate retroflex sound.

ठाउँ (Thaaũ) – place कोठा (koThaa) – room
अठार (aThaara) – eighteen

3.3 ड (D) – is voiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.

डर (Dar – fear लडाई (laDaaī) – fight
हाड (haaD) – bone

3.4 ढ (Dh) – is voiced, aspirate retroflex consonant.

ढोका (Dhokaa) – door बढार्नु (baDhaarnu) – to sweep
चढ (chaDha) – climb

3.5 ण (n) – It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

4. Dental Consonants – Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or lower teeth are called Dentals. In pronouncing the dental sounds in Nepali the tip of the tongue touches the root of the upper teeth and when the tongue is removed from the root of the teeth, the air suddenly escapes through the mouth.

4.1 त (t) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

तास (taas) – a playing card बतास (bataas) – wind
सर्बत (sarbat) – cold drink (sweet)

4.2 थ (th) – is an unvoiced, aspirate dental consonant.

थाल (thaal) – plate बथान (bathaan) group, swarm
अनाथ (anaath) orphan

4.3 द (d) – is a voiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

दाम (daam) – price बिवाद (bibaad) – arguement
बदाम (badaam) – peanut.

4.4 ध (dh) – is a voiced, aspirate dental consonant.

धर्म (dharma) – religion आधा (aadhaa) – half
राजधानी (raajdhaa i) – capital

4.5 न (n) – is a nasal dental consonant.

नाम (naam) – name इनार (inaar) – well.
पानी (paani) – water

5. Bi-labial consonants – In the articulation of these sounds, the air passage is completely blocked by closing the lips and then they are opened so that the air suddenly escaps from the mouth.

5.1 प (p) – is unvoiced, non-aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

पानी (paani) – water तपाई – (tapaai) – you (Hon.)
ताप (taap) – heat.

5.2 फ (ph) – is unvoiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

फोहोर (phohor) – dirty फलफूल (phalphul) – fruits
जवाफ (jawaaph) – answer

5.3 ब (b) – is voiced, non-aspirate, bilabial consonant sound.

बाटो (baaTo) – way बराबर (baraabar) – equal
बा (baa) – father

5.4 भ (bh) – is voiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

भित्र (bhitra) – inside अभागी (abhaagi) – unlucky

5.5 म (m) – is a bilabial nasal sound.

मलाई (malaai) – me कमला (kamalaa) – Kamala
आमा (aamaa) – mother

6. The remaining consonant sounds–

6.1 य (y) – is unrounded, palatal semi-vowel sound.

यता (yataa) – hither बयासी (bayaasi) – eighty two
समय (samaya) – time.

6.2 र (r) – is a voiced, non-aspirate, rolled, alveolar consonant sound. In its articulation, the tip of the tongue makes a rapid succession of taps against the teeth-ridge, producing a rolling sound.

राम्रो (raamro) – good, pretty कराउ – (karaau) – shout !
सारी (saari) – saari

6.3 ल (l) – is a voiced, non-aspirate lateral sound. To produce this sound the blade of tongue should touch the teeth-ridge, and the air passage should be blocked in the middle so that air passes between the edges of the tongue, and the back of the teeth.

लामो (laamo) – long कलम – (kalam) – pen
दाल (daal) – lentil soup

6.4 व (w) – is a bilabial semi-vowel. In its articulation the two lips touch one another at the two ends, leaving in the middle a free passage for the outgoing breath to escape.

There is a common tendency to pronounce it as b ब

वारी (waari) – this side of a river or a street.
वरिपरि (waripari) – around

6.5 स (s) – is an unvoiced dental sibilant sound. In its articulation, the blade of the tongue touches the teeth-ridge, the front of the tongue being at the same time somewhat raised in the direction of the hard palate.

सारी (saari) – saari कसरी – (kasari) – how
पचास (pachaas) – fifty

6.6 श र ष – In Nepali words, these 's' sounds are pronounced as स (s).

6.7 ह (h) – is a glottal fricative.

हामी (haami) – we महु (maha) – honey
शहर (shahar) – city पोहोर (phor) – last year

7. Besides these above thirty three consonant sounds, there are three compound consonant sounds which are represented by three single alphabets in written Nepali.

7.1 क्ष – is a combination of k and sh
अक्षर (ahshar) – alphabet

6.2 त्र– is a combination of t and r.
भित्र (bhitra) – inside

7.3 ज्ञ – is a comibination of gy+n
ज्ञान (gyaan) – knowledge.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE

1. Practice the following sounds :

Non-aspirate	vs	Aspirate

A. क (k) (kh)

काम	(kaam) – work	खाम	(khaam) – envelope
कर	(kar) – tax	खर	(khar) – thatch
कुन	(kun) – which	खुन	(khun) – blood

B. ग (g) (gh)

गर	(gar) Do !	घर	(ghar) – home
गाउ	(gaau) – Sing !	घाउ	(ghaau) – wound
गोडा	(goDaa) – foot	घोडा	(ghoDaa) horse

An Aspirated sound is one accompanied by a strong puff of air. Unaspirated sounds are not released with a puff of air.

Don't hesitate to exaggerate the aspiration of a sound in the beginning.

2. Practice the following sounds in contrast :

A. Short Vowel vs Long vowel

अ	(a) as in 'about'	आ	(aa) – as in 'father'
अरू	(aru) – other, more	आरू	(aaru) – peach
कम	(kam) – less	काम	(kaam) – work
पनि	(pani) – also	पानी	(paani) – water
बजे	(baje) – o'clock	बाजे	(baaje) – grand father

B. Voiced non-aspirate vs Voiced aspirate

ब	(b)	भ	(bh)
बन्नु	(bannu) – be made	भन्नु	(bhannu) – tell

बारी	(baari) – dry field	भारी	(bhaari) – load
बोली	(boli) – speech	भोली	(bholi) – tomorrow

Sounds in the production of which vocal chords vibrate are called voiced sounds. The vocal chords don't vibrate in the production of voiceless sounds.

3. Practice the following sounds:

Non-aspirate	vs	Aspirate

Voiceless

च	(ch)	छ	(chh)
चीन	(chin) – China	छीन	(chhin) – moment
चिन्नु	(chinnu) – recognize	छिन्नु	(chhinnu)–cut through

Voiced

ज	(j)	झ	(jh)
जान्नु	(jaannu) – know	झान्नु	(jhaannu)–put butter and fried spices into the daal.
जन	(jan) – people	झन	(jhan) – more

Voiceless

प	(pa)	फ	(ph)
पर्सि	(parsi) – day after tomorrow	फर्सि	(pharsi) – pumpkin
पोहोर	(pohor) – last year	फोहोर	(phohor) – dirty
पाल्नु	(paalnu) – tame	फाल्नु	(phaalnu) –throw away

4. Practice the following sounds:

Voiceless	vs	Voiced
कति	(kati – how much	गति (gati) – speed
काम	(kaam) – work	गाम (gaam) – villa
खर	(khar) – thatch	घर (ghar) – home
खाम	(khaam) – envelope	घाम (ghaam) – sun
चरा	(charaa) – bird	जरा (jaraa) – root
चोर्नु	(chornu) –steal	जोर्नु (jornu) – join
छर्नु	(chharnu) – sow	झर्नु (jharnu) – descend
छुट	(chhuT) – rebate	झुट (jhuT) – lie
पानी	(paani) – water	बानी (baani) – habit
पोका	(pokaa) – bundle, packet	बोका (bokaa) - uncastrated male goat
फरिया	(phariyaa) – sari	भरिया (bhariyaa) – porter
फुट्नु	(phuTnu) – break	भुट्नु (bhuTnu) – fry.

You can feel the vibration of your vocal chords while producing the voiced consonants. Note the difference in the meaning when sound is voiced and not voiced.

5. The [T] and [D] sounds of Nepali are usualy difficult for native English speakers. Listen and practice the following:

Non-aspirated retroflex		Aspirated retroflex
	Voiceless	
ट	(T)	ठ (Th)
टोक्	(Tok) – Bite !	ठोक् (Thok) – Hit !
काट्	(kaaT) – Cut	काठ् (kaaTh) – wood
बाटो	(baaTo) – road	बाठो (baaTho) – clever
	Voiced	
ड	(D)	ढ (Dh)
डोका	(Dokaa) – basket	ढोका (Dhokaa) - door

डाक्नु	(Daaknu) – call, summon	ढाक्नु	(Dhaaknu) – cover
डाँटनु	(DããTnu) – bully	ढाँटनु	(Dhãã Tnu) – lie

Sounds produced with the apex of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity are called RETROFLEX sounds.

6. Listen and practice the following dental sounds:

Non-aspirated		Aspirated	
	voiceless		
त	(t)	थ	(th)
ताल	(taal) – lake	थाल	(thaal) – tray, a big plate
ताप	(taap) – heat	थाप्	(thaap) – hold out !
सात	(saat) – seven	साथ	(saath) – with
	voiced		
द	(d)	ध	(dh)
दाइ	(daai) – elder brother	धाइ	(dhaai) – nurse, midwife
दान	(daan) – gift	धान	(dhaan) – paddy
दाम	(daam) – price	धाम	(dhaam) – religious place

Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or the lower teeth are called DENTAL sounds. The English dentals (like in "think)" and Nepali dentals are pronounced with a slight difference. Listening carefully is the only way to discern this difference.

7. Practice the following sounds in contrast:

a) Voiceless Retroflex		Voiceless Dental	
ट	(T)	त	(t)
टीन	(Tin) – tin	तीन	(tin) – three
टार्नु	(Taarnu) – put off	तार्नु	(Taarnu) – fry
पाट	(paaT) – jute	पात	(paat) – leaf

b) Voiced Retroflex — Voiced Dental

ड	(D)	non-aspirated	द	(d)
डर	(Dar) – fear		दर	(dar) – rate
डाम	(Daam) – mark		दाम	(daam) – price
डिल	(Dil) – ridge, edge		दिल	(dil) – heart

c) Voiceless Retroflex — Voiced Dental

ठ	(T)	aspirated	थ	(th)
ठिटी	(ThiTi) – young girl		थिति	(thiti) – order
ठाम	(Thaam) – place		थाम	(thaam) – pillar
साठी	(saaThi) – sixty		साथी	(saathi) – friend

d) Voiced Retroflex — Voiced Dental

ढ	(Dh)	aspirated	ध	(dh)
ढाप	(Dhaap) – pat on back		धाप	(dhaap) marsh
ढोका	(Dhokaa) – door		धोका	(dhokaa) – deceit
ढाक	(Dhaak) – cover !		धाक	(dhaak) – boasting

LESSON 1

VOCABULARY

chha	is	kholnu	to open
dinu	to give	kitaab	book
garnu	to do	mero	my, mine
ghar	home, house	naam	name
hajur	yes (polite)	namaste	hello, good-bye, greetings
ho	is (definitive)		
hoina	is not (definitive)	ni	and how about
jholaa	shoulder bag	paDhnu	to read
kaalo	black	seto	white
kaapi	note book	ta	then
kahãã	where	tapaaĩko	your, yours
kalam	pen	tyo	that
kamij	shirt	wahããko	his, her, hers
kasko	whose	yo	this
kasto	what color, how (Qualitative)		
ke	what		

PART I

1. namaste.	Hello.
namaste.	Hello.
2. tapaaĩko naam ke ho ?	What is your name ?
mero naam raam ho.	My name is Ram.
3. wahããko naam ke ho ?	What is his name ?
wahããko naam krishna ho.	His name is Krishna.
4. tapaaĩko ghar kahãã ho ?	Where do you come from ? (lit. Where is your house ?)
mero ghar amerikaa ho.	I am from the States. (lit. My home is America)

5. wahããko ghar kahãã ho ?	Where does he come from ?
wahããko ghar nepaal ho.	He is from Nepal.

PART II

(a)

1. yo ke ho ?	What is this ?
yo kalam ho.	This is a pen.
2. yo kasko kalam ho ?	Whose pen is this ?
yo mero kalam ho.	This is my pen.
3. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
tyo kitaab ho.	That is a book.
4. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?	Whoose book is that ?
tyo wahããko kitaab ho.	That is his book.
5. yo ni ?	And this ?
tyo tapaaiko kitaab ho.	That is your book.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo kitaab ho.	This is a book.
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?	Whose book is that ?
yo mero kitaab ho.	This is my book.
3. kitaab kholnus.	Open the book, please.
tapaaile ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile kitaab kholeko.	I opened the book.
4. wahããle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
wahããle kitaab kholeko.	He opened the book.

(c)

1. jim !	Jim !
hajur.	Yes.
2. tyo kalam ho ?	Is that a pen ?
hoina.	No, it isn't.
3. tyo ke ho ta ?	What is it then ?
yo kaapi ho.	It's a note-book.
4. tyo kasko kaapi ho ?	Whose note-book is that ?
yo mero kaapi ho.	It's my note-book.

(d)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo kalam ho.	It's a pen.
2. tyo kasko kalam ho ?	Whose pen is that ?
yo mero kalam ho.	It's my pen.
3. tapaaĩko kalam kasto chha ?	What color is your pen ?
mero kalam kaalo chha.	My pen is black.
4. kalam dinos.	Please give (me) the pen.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile kalam dieko.	I gave (you) the pen.

(e)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo jholaa ho.	It's a shoulder bag.
2. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?	Whose bag is that ?
yo wahããko jholaa ho.	It's his bag.
3. tyo jholaa kasto chha ?	What color is that bag ?
yo jholaa seto chha.	This bag is white.

4. tyo jholaa dinos.	Please give (me) that bag.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile jholaa dieko.	I gave (you) the bag.

(f)

1. maaik ji !	Mike !
hajur.	Yes.
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?	Whose book is that ?
yo mero kitaab ho.	This is my book.
3. paDhnos.	Please read it.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile paDheko.	I read.
4. tapaaĩle kasko kitaab paDheko ?	Whose book did you read ?
maile mero kitaab paDheko.	I read my book.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The suffix **'ko'** is attached to the end of nouns and some pronouns to denot possesion.

maaik	– Mike	maaikko	– Mike's
tapaaĩ	– you	tapaaĩko	– yours
wahãã	– he	wahããko	– his, her, hei

but Note

ma	– I	mero	– mine
u	– he	usko	his
haami	– we	haamro	– our, ours.

2. The word **'namaste'** is used both when people meet and part, taking the place ' *'good morning'*, *'good night'*, *'good bye'*, etc. **'namaskar'** is another form of gr ting (lee eommon than **'namaste)** used when more respect or courtesy is appropria

3. Word order One important difference between English and Nepali is word order. In Nepali, the verb always comes at the end of the sentence. Note the word order in the followig sentence:

mero naam kamalaa ho !	tapaaĩko ghar kahãã ho ?
My name Kamala is.	Your house where is.

4. **'Hajur'** *'Yes'* (polite), is used in response after one is addressed. In also can mean *'I beg your pardon'* when pronounced with rising intonation.

5. **ji or jyu'**, is usualy added to the end of people's names to express respect.

6. **'hoina'** does not always correspond to *'no'* in English but instead usually to *'no, it isn't.*

   'ho' may be used as a single-word reply in affirmation or to mean *'Yes, it is'*.

7. **Honorific Commands**

kholnus or kholnos.	Please, open it.
paDhunus or paDhnos.	Please, read it.

8, In spoken Nepali the **'eko'** form is very commonly used in simple past, past Perfect and persent progressive tenses.

Examples.	maaikle ke gareko ?	What did Mike do ?
	maaikle kitaab kholeko.	Mike opened the book.
	ke paDheko ?	What are you reading ?
	ke lekheko ?	What are you writing ?

9. **'le'** is attached to the snbject in the past tense, if the verb is transitive. A transitive verb is one that requires an object.

Example.

Transitive verb, i.e. those having objects

khaanu	– to eat
banda garnu	– to close
garnu	– to do

intransitive verb, i.e. those not needing objects.

sutnu	– to sleep
jaanu	– to go

10. **'ni'** is an interogative particle which is used at the end of a sentence. It means,... and how about ?

11. **'ta'** is a commonly used particle with no literal meaning. It's meaning varies. In the following dialogue, it means *'then'*.

tyo raamko kitaab ho ?	Is that Ram's book ?
hoina.	No, it isn't.
kasko ho ta ?	Whose is it, then ?
mero ho.	It's mine.

12. The English Verb *'is'* has three different equivalents ih Nepali:
'ho' 'chha' and **'hunchha'**

(a) **'ho'** (negative **'hoina'**) is used to define somthing or somebody. Examples.

kaaThmaanDu nepaalko raajdhaani ho.	Kathmandu is the capital of Nepal.
yo mero ghar ho.	This is my house.

(b) **'chha'** (nagative 'chhaina') is used to locate things and people.

kalam Tebulmaa chha.	The pen is on the table.
mero bhaai gharmaa chha.	My brother is at home.

'chha' is also used to state the quallty of somthing or somebody.

usko kamij raamro chha.	His shirt is nice.
mero kalam kaalo chha.	My pen is black.

(c) Study the following sentences carefully:

mero ghar raato chha.	My house is red.
raato ghar mero ho.	The red house is mine.

13. Note the different meanings of 'kasto'–

suntala kasto chha ?	How does the orange taste ?
tapaaiko kamij kasto chha?	What is your shirt like ?
kasto chha ?	How is it ?

LESSON 2

VOCABULARY.

aamaa	mother	ma	I
amilo	sour	maile	I (in past tense with transitive verb)
baa	father		
banda garnu	to close, to shut	malaai	to me, for me
chhaina	isn't	paani	water
chiso	cold	pani	also
chiyaa	tea	sanchai	fine, well
Dhokaa	door	suntalaa	orange
khaanu	to eat, to drink	sayaau	apple
linu	to take	taato	hot

PART 1

(a)

1. namaste. namaste.	Greetings ! Greetings !
2. sanchai ? sanchai.	How are you ? Fine, thanks
3. tapaaĩko ghar kahãã ho ? mero ghar amerikaa ho.	Where are you from ? I am from the States.
4. tapaaĩko baako naam ke ho ? mero baako naam bil ho.	What's your father's name ? My father's name is Bill.
5. tapaaĩko aamaako naam ke ho ? mero aamaako naam baarbaraa ho.	What's your mother's name? My mother's name is Barbara.

(b)

1. tapaaĩlaai kasto chha ?	How are you ?
malaai sanchai chha.	I'm fine.
2. tapaaĩlaai ni ?	And you ?
malaai pani sanchai chha.	I'm fine too.
3. tapaaĩko ghar ameriakaa ho ?	Are you from America ?
ho, mero ghar amerikaa ho.	Yes, I'm from America.
4. amerikaamaa kahãã ?	Where in America. ?
kyaaliphorniyaamaa.	In California.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What's that ?
tyo Dhokaa ho.	That's a door.
2. Dhokaa kholnos.	Open the door, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile Dhokaa kholeko.	I opened the door.
3. wahããle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
wahããle Dhokaa kholeko.	He opened the door.
4. Dhokaa banda garnos.	Close the door, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile Dhokaa banda gareko.	I closed the door.
5. wahããle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
wahããle Dhokaa banda gareko.	He closed the door.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo suntalaa ho.	It's an orange.

2. khaanos	Have some, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile suntalaa khaaeko.	I ate the orange.
3. suntalaa kasto chha ?	How is the orange ?
suntalaa guliyo chha.	The orange is sweet.
4. malaai pani dinos.	Give me some, too, please.
linos.	Take it, please.

(c)

1. tyo suntalaa ho ?	Is than an orange ?
hoina.	No, it is not.
2. ke ho, ta ?	What is it, then ?
syaau ho.	It's an apple.
3. khaanos.	Have some, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile syaau khaaeko.	I ate the apple.
4. syaau amilo chha ?	Is the apple sour ?
chhaina, guiliyo chha.	No, it isn't. It's sweet

(d)

1. chiyaa khaanus.	Have some tea, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile chiyaa khaaeko.	I drank some tea.
2. wahããle paani khaaeko ?	Did he drink water ?
hoina, wahããle pani chiyaa khaaeko.	No, he also drank tea.
3. chiyaa chiso chha ?	Is the tea cold ?
chhaina.	No, it isn't.
4. kasto chha, ta ?	How is it, then ?
taato chha.	It's hot.

GRAMMAR NOTES.

1. **tapaaĩlaai kasto chha ?** Though not indiomatic, it is quite frequently used by the Nepalese in contact with foreigners (a direct translation '*How are you*' ?)

2. sanchai, emphatic form of sancho. lit., well, in good health, it means. How are you?

LESSON 3

VOCABULARY

aaphno	own	katiwaTaa	how many
aaunu	to come	khaliti	pocket
baahira	outside	ko	who
bahini	sister (younger)	kun	which
bhaai	brother (younger)	maa	at, in, on
bhitra	in, inside	nira	near
chaahI	one (specifies)	raajya	state
chaar	four	raakhnu	to put
chhan	are	raato	red
daai	brother (older)	shahar	town, city
dui	two	ti	those
ek	one	timi	you (Familiar)
hun	are	tin	three
jaanu	to go	usko	his, hers
jhyaal	window	usle	he, she
kaslaai	whom	yi	these
kati	how much		

PART 1

(a)

1. tapaaIko naam ke ho ?
   mero naam maaik ho
   What's your name ?
   My name is Mike.
2. wahããko ni ?
   wahããko naam PiTar ho.
   And his ?
   His name is Peter.
3. tapaaIko ghar kahãã ho ?
   amerikaamaa
   Where do you come from ?
   From America.
4. kun raajyamaa ?
   waashingTanmaa.
   Which state ?
   In Washington.

5. tapaaiko shaharko naam ke ho ?	What is the name of your city?
siyaaTal.	Seattle.

(b)

1. namaste.	Hello.
namaste.	Hello.
2. u ko ho ?	Who is he ?
u mero bhaai ho.	He is my younger brother.
3. usko naam ke ho ?	What's his name ?
usko naam raam ho.	His name is Ram.
4. tapaaiko daai hunuhunchha ?	Do you have an older brother ?
hunuhunna.	No, I don't.
5. didi ni ?	How about an older sister ?
didi pani hunuhunna.	I don't have an older sister either.
6. bahini chha ta ?	Do you have a younger sister then?
chha.	Yes, I do.
7. tapaaiko bahiniko naam ke ho?	What's your sister's name ?
mero bahiniko naam sitaa ho.	My sister's name is Sita.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What's that ?
yo kitaab ho.	It's a book.
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?	Whose book is that ?
yo mero kitaab ho.	It's my book.
3. tyo kitaabko naam ke ho ?	What's the name of that book ?
yo kitaabko naam 'Basic, Course in Spoken Nepali' ho.	It's name is 'Basic Course in Spoken Nepali'.

4. PaDhnos.	Read it, please.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile kitaab paDheko.	I read the book.
5. wahããle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
wahããle kitaab paDheko.	He read the book.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo kalam ho.	It's a pen.
2. tyo kasko kalam ho ?	Whose pen is that ?
yo mero kalam ho.	It's my pen.
3. tyo kalam wahããlaai dinos.	Please give that pen to him.
tapaaĩle kalam kaslaai dieko ?	Whom did you give your pen ?
maile kalam wahããlaai dieko.	I gave him the pen.
4. tapaaĩle wahããlaai kasko kalam dieko ?	Whose pen did you give him ?
maile wahããlaai mero kalam dieko.	I gave him my pen.

(c)

1. jhyaal banda gara.	Shut the window.
timile ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile jhyaal banda gareko.	I shut the window.
2. jhyaal khola.	Open the window.
usle ke kholeko ?	What did he open ?
usle jhyaal kholeko.	He opened the window.
3. usle Dhokaa kholeko ?	Did he open the door ?
hoina, usle jhyaal kholeko.	No, he opened the window.

(d)

1. baahira jaau.	Go outside.
timi kahãã gaeko ?	Where did you go ?
ma baahira gaeko.	I went outside.
2. u kahãã gaeko ?	Where did he go ?
u baahira gaeko.	He went out.
3. bhitra aau.	Come in.
timile ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
ma bhitra aaeko.	I came in ?
4. usle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
u bhitra aaeko.	He came in.

(e)

1. blyaakborDnira jaanos.	Please go to the black-board.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
ma blyaakborDnira gaeko.	I went to the black-board.
2. wahããle ke gareko ?	What did he do ?
wahãã blyaakborDnira gaeko.	He went to the black-board.
3. blyaakborDmaa tapaaĩko naam lekhnos.	Please write your name on the black-board.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile blyaakborDmaa aaphno naam lekheko.	I wrote my name on the black-board.

(f)

1. yo kati ho ?	How much is this ?
ek.	One.
2. yo ni ?	And this
dui.	Two.

3. blyaakborDmaa tin lekhnos.	Please write the number '3' on the black-board.
tapaaĩle ke lekheko ?	What did you write ?
maile tin lekheko.	I wrote the number '3'.
4. wahããle chaar lekheko ?	Did he write the number '4' ?
hoina, tin lekheko.	No, he wrote '3'.

(g)

1. ti ke hun ?	What are those ?
ti kalam hun.	They are pens.
2. tyahãã katiwaTaa kalam chhan?	How many pens are there ?
tyahãã tinwaTaa kalam chhan.	There are three pens.
3. tapaaĩko kalam kun chaahĩ ho?	Which one is your pen ?
mero kalam raato chaahĩ ho.	The red one is my pen.
4. tapaaĩko kalam khaltimaa raakhnos.	Please put your pen in your pocket.
tapaaĩle ke gareko ?	What did you do ?
maile kalam mero khaltimaa raakheko.	I put my pen in my pocket.
5. tapaaĩle kasko kalam khaltimaa raakheko ?	Whose pen did you put in your pocket ?
maile mero kalam khaltimaa raakheko.	I put my pen in my pocket.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'waTaa'** and **'janaa'** are classifiers which are used with countable nouns. Countable nouns, as opposed to mass nouns, are those which can be counted. They are used post positionally to the number, but precede the noun in question. As a general rule **'waTaa'** is used with things, where as **'janaa'** Is only used with people.

Forms.

a) **cuTaa, dui waTaa or duiTaa, tia waTaa, chaar waTaa.**
b) **ek janaa, dui janaa,** etc.

2. **'nira'**– *to,near.* **nera** is the variant spelling of **nira**.

3. **'hun'**– is plural of **'ho**, while **'hoinan'** is the plural negative.

4. **'chhan'**– is plural of **'chha'** and **chhaina** is the plural negative.

5. **Post-Positions.**

Note that in Nepali, English preposition epuivalents come after the noun and thus are postpositions. For example:–

nepaalmaa	*–in Nepal.*
blyaakborDmaa	*–on the black-board.*

6. **'aaphno'** combines with the possessive pronouns to emphasize possession, i.e. *my own, his own,* etc. for example–

maile aaphno naam lekheko.	*–I wrote my own name.*
sitaale aaphno kitaab paDheko.	*–Sita read her own book.*

7. **chaahi,**– virtually means *'one'* in situations asking for an identification. For exapmle—

kun chaahi	*–which one ?*
yo chaahi	*–This one.*

8. The respect for seniority, rank and caste position in the Nepalese culture accounts for different forms of the infinitive *'to be'* or **'hunu'**. In part 1 b when inquiring about one's family member, **'hunuhunchha'** (affirmative) and **'hunnhunna'** (negative) are used in reference to older brothers and sisters while simply **'chha'** is used when referring to younger siblings. This more respecutful form is also used when one wishes to be courteous.

9. **'timi'** one of the three forms of *'you'*, is also a result of the above mentioned attitude, i.e. **'timi'** denotes sccond person usages for those younger in age, lower in rank, and for lower in caste position. In addition, the verb ending changes, as in Part II, c. The command form **'garnus'** changes to **'gara !** This form of *'you'* is also used in situations of familarity, i.e. between friends.

LESSON 4

VOCABULARY

aaja	today	kina	why
ani	and then	kinnu	to buy
baaTa	from	ki	or
bajaar	market	klaas	c ass
baje	o'clock (When stating/asking time of an event)	koko	who (plural)
		lekhnu	to write
		najaane	will not go (see note)
belukaa	evening		
bholi	tomorrow	napaDhne	will not read
bholi bihaana	tomorrow morning	naraakhne	will not put
bidaa	holiday	pããch	five
chaamal	uncooked rice	paune saat	quarter to seven
chini	sugar	pharkanu	to return
daal-bhaat	lentils & cooked rice.	phuTbal	Foot ball
		raksi	home made spirit
das	ten	saaDhe das	half past ten
Deraa	apartment	saat	seven
diũso	day time (afternoon)	saathi	friend
dudh	milk	samma	until, as far as, up to
holaa	may be, might be probably	sawaa pããch	quarter past five
kaphi	coffee	sinemaa	movie, picture show
khaanaa	food, meal	tarkaari	vegetables.
		Tep	tape

PART I.

(a)

1. sanchai ? — How are you ?
   sanchai chha, tapaaĩlaai ni ? — I'm fine, and you ?

2. sanchai chha. tapaaĩ kahãã jaane? I'm fine. Where are you going ?
   mero Deraamaa. To my apartment.
3. tapaaĩko Deraa kahãã chha ? Where is your apartment ?
   mero Deraa kamal pokharimaa chaa. It's in Kamal Pokhari.
4. tapaaĩko Deraamaa ko ko chhan? Who else are staying with you ?
   ma ra mero saathi. Me and a friend of mine.

(b)

1. tapaaĩ chiyaa khaane ki kaphi khaane ? What would you like ? Tea or coffee ?
   ma kaphi khaane. I'll have coffee.
2. tapaaĩ ni ? and how about you ?
   ma chiyaa khaane. I'll have tea.
3. kaphimaa chini raakhne ? Should I put sugar in your coffee ?
   raakhne. Yes, put in some, please.
4. dudh ni ? Milk too ?
   naraakhne. No, thanks. Don't put in any.

Part II.

(a)

1. chiyaa khaane ? Wold you like to have tea. ?
   khaane. I'll have some.
2. tapaaĩ ni ? And you ?
   ma pani khaane. I'll drink some, too.
3. chiyaamaa chini raakhne ? Do you want sugar in your tea ?
   raakhne. Sure, put some in, please.
4. dudh ni ? Milk too ?
   dudh pani raakhne. Yes, put some milk in, too.

(b)

1. tapaaI pããch baje kahãã jaane ?	Where are you going at 5 o'clock?
ma aaphno Deraamaa jaane.	I am going to my place.
2. Deraamaa ke garne ?	What are you going to do there ?
daal bhaat khaane.	I'm going to eat rice.
3. ani ke garne ?	And then what are you going to do?
nepaali Tep sunne.	I'll listen to some Nepali tapes.
4. kati baje sutne ?	What time are you going to go to sleep ?
das baje sutne.	I'll go to bed at ten.

(c)

1. kahãã jaane ?	Where are you going ?
bajaarmaa jaane.	I'm going to the bazar.
2. bajaarmaa kina jaane ?	Why are you going to the bazar?
chaamal, daal ra tarkaari kinna.	To buy rice, lentils and vegetables.
3. bajaar baaTa kati baje pharkane?	What time are you coming back from the bazar ?
chaar baje holaa.	Probably around four.

(d)

1. bholi bihaana kati baje UThne?	What time are you going to get up tomorrow morning ?
chha baje uThne.	I'm going to get up at 6 o'clock.
2. klaasmaa kati baje jaane ?	When will you go to class ?
klaasmaa saat baje jaane.	I'll go at seven.
3. khaanaa kati baje khaane ?	What time are you going to eat ?
das baje holaa.	Probably at ten o'clock.
4. ani ke garne ?	What will you do then ?
ani kitaab paDhne.	And then I'll read a book.

(e)

1. aaja diũso nepaali paDhne ki na paDhne ?	Are you going to study any Nepali this afternoon or not ?
na paDhne.	No, I'm not going to read any.
2. ke garne ta ?	What are you going to do, then ?
nepali lekhne.	I'll write Nepali.
3. kati baje samma nepaali lekhne?	Up to what time are you going to write Nepali ?
sawaa pããch baje samma.	Until quarter after five.
4. ani ke garne ?	What are you going to do, then ?
ani phuTbal khelne.	Then I'll play foot-ball.

(f)

1. aaja belukaa kahãã jaane ?	Where are you going later on this evening ?
sinemaa herna jaane.	I'm going to the movie.
2. tapaaĩ pani jaane ?	Are you going, too ?
najaane.	No, I'm not going to go.
3. tapaaĩ kahãã jaane ta ?	Where are you going to go then ?
saathiko gharmaa jaane.	I'm going over to my friend's house.
4. saathiko gharbaaTa kati baje pharkane ?	What time will you come back from your freind's ?
paune saat baje holaa.	Probably at quarer to seven.

(g)

1. bholi nepaali paDhne ?	Are you going to study Nepali tomorrow ?
bholi nepali napaDhne.	Tomorrow I'm not going to read any Nepali.

2. kina ?	Why ?
bholi bidaa ho.	Tomorrow is a holiday.
3. bidaamaa ke garne ?	During your day off what are you going to do ?
shaharmaa jaane ra raksi khaane.	I'm going to go to town and drink raksi.
4. tapaaĩ pani aaune ?	Do you want to come, too ?
aaune.	Sure, I'll come.
5. shaharbaaTa kati baje pharkane?	What time are you coming back from town ?
saaDhe das baje pharkane.	I'll come back at half past ten.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Such words as '**jaane**' '**khaane**', '**paDhne**' etc wich are short verb forms are commonly used in spoken Nepali. The 'ne' ending is indicative of a future event, where as the '**eko**' verb ending refers to a past activity. Study the following examples:

tapaaĩ bholi kaaThmaanDu jaane?	Are you going to Kathmandu tomorrow ?
timi chiyaa khaane ki kaphi khaane ?	Would you like tea or coffee ?
usle ke paDheko ?	What did he read ?
usle nepaali kitaạb paDheko.	He read a Nepali book.

2. '**na**' is used as a prefix to the verb to negate the idea.

tapaaĩ bajaar jaane ?	Are you going to the bazaar ?
najaane.	No, I'm not.

3. **ko ko** (lit. *who, who*). Most question words in Nepali are often repeated to indicate plurality.

tapaaĩ ke ke khaane ?	What (what different things) do you want to eat ?

4. '**kinna**'- (From '**kinnu**' to buy). This modification of the verb infinitive specfies the purpose of an endeavor.

   In this case: '*for the purpose of buying*'

   Note that when used in a sentence, the infinitive ending of the verb '**nu**' changes into '**na**'

   hernu — ma sinemaa herna najaane—I'm not going to the movie.
   sutnu — ma sutna jaane —I'm going to go to sleep.

5. '**holaa**'— It means, '*probably*', '*may be*', '*might be*', '*possibly*', '*like*'.

LESSON 5

VOCABULARY

asanTol	Asan Tole (a street in Kathmandu)	niuroD	New Road (a street in Kathmandu)
baTTaa	packet	pasal	store, shop
bhayo	(lit. became)	paainchha	is available
chij	cheese, thing	paaidaina	is not available
churoT	cigarettee	phalphul	fruit
hunchha	Yes, ok, sure	phul	egg, flower
jammaa	total	saahuji	store-keeper
linu	to take	sukaa	quarter of a rupee
mahangO	expensive	yahãã	here
mohar	half a rupee 50 paisa.		

PART I

1. namaste. — Hello.
   namaste. — Hello.
2. kahãã jaane ? — Where are you going ?
   bajaar jaane. — I'm going to the bazar.
3. bajaarmaa kina jaane ? — Why are you going to the bazar?
   tarkaari kinna jaane. — I'm going to buy vegetables.
4. ani kahãã jaane ? — Where are you going then ?
   Deraamaa pharkane. — I'm going to go back to my place.
5. kati baje pharkane ? — What time are you heading back ?
   pããch baje holaa. — Probably, at five O'clock.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩko pasalmaa churoT chha?	Do you have cigarettes in your store ?
chha. kati line ?	Yes, I have How many would you like ?
2. ek baTTaako kati ?	How much is a packet ?
ek baTTaako paach mohar.	Two and a half rupees.
3. dui baTTa dinos.	Give me two packets, plase.
linos.	Please, take it.

(b)

1. yahãã suntalaa chha ?	Do you have oranges ?
chha.	Yes, I do.
2. ek rupiyããko kati ?	How many for a rupee ?
dui waTaa.	Two.
3. mahango bhayo ?	They're expensive ?
tinwaTaa dinos.	Please give me three for a rupee
4. hunchha. kati rupiyããko line ?	O.K. How many do you want ?
pããch rupiyããko line.	I'll take five rupees worth.
5. la, pandhra waTaa linos.	Here, take fifteen of them.

(c)

1. asan Tolmaa phalphul paainchha?	Are fruits available in Asan Tole?
paainchha.	Yes, they are.
2. chij ni ?	How about cheese ?
chij ta paaĩdaina.	No, cheese is not available.

3. chij kahãã paainchha ta ?
niuroDmaa paainchha.

Where is cheese found then ?
It's found in New road.

4. ek kiloko kati parchha ?
bis rupiyãã parchha.

How much is a kilo ?
It costs 20 rupees.

(d)

1. e saahuji ! phul chha ?
chha. katiwaTaa line ?

Oh shopkeeper! Do you have eggs?
Yes, I do. How many would you like ?

2. euTaako kati ho ?
tin sukaa.

How much are they a piece ?
Seventy five paisa.

3. chaarwaTaa dinos.
linos.

Give me four, please.
Here, take them, please.

4. jammaa kati bhayo ?
tin rupiyãã.

How much does it come to ?
Three rupees.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'mahango bhayo'** *It's expensive*—(lit. *It became expensive*) is a very commonly used expression, when bargaining.

2. **sukaa** — *a 25 paisa coin.*
mohaar — *a 50 paisa coin.*

Both of these are commonly used in Kathmandu and in the hills. In the Terai you will hear people saying '*chaar aanna*' for sukaa and '*aaTh aanaa*' for a mohar.

3. '*paainchha*'–This is an example of an impersonal verb. Its form remains the same irrespective of numbers, persons, and genders. The most common verb form is the singular third person of any tense. The impersonal verb forms are very common in Nepali and are often used in places where English prefers to use personal forms.

Usages

PRESENT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
paainchha (is found)	paainna, paaIdaina.
chaahinchha (is needed)	chaahinna, chhaahIdaina.
suninchha (is heard)	suninna, sunidaina.
dekhinchha (is seen)	dekhinna, dekhidaina.

PAST TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
paaiyo	paaiena
chaahiyo	chaahiena
suniyo	sunIena
dekhiyo	dekhiena

FORMATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS

a) All transitive verbs can become impersonal by adding the suffix 'i' to the root.

dekhnu	(*to see*)	**dekhinchha**	(*It is seen*)
dinu	(*to give*)	**diinchha**	(*It is given*)
garnu	(*to do*)	**garinchha**	(*It is done*)

4. **'kati parchha' ?**— is one of the many ways of asking the price of a commodity.

LESSON 6.

VOCABULARY

āāp	mango	paakeT	packet
aliali	a little, a few	paisaa	paisa
chaahidaina	isn't needed	parchha	(it) costs
DaT pen	ball point pen	pardaina	does not cost
dherai	many, a lot of	saaDhe	halt
gaIDaa	a brand of cigarettes (lit. rhinocerous)	sisaa kalam sisi	pencil bottle
kehi	any, some (thing)	syaau	apple
khaam	envelope	tibbati	Tibetan
lyaaidinu	to bring for some one	Thik	O. K., all right.
maatra	only		

PAR I

1. ma bajaar jaane. — I am going to the bazaar.
   tapaaIlaai kehi chaahinchha ? — Do you need anything ?
   chaahinchha. — Yes, I do.
2. ke ke chaahinchha ? — What do you need ?
   ek baTTaa churoT ra ek sisi raksi. — I need a packet of cigarettes and a bottle of local liquor.
3. kun churoT ? — What brand of cigarette ?
   gaIDaa. — Galda.
4. paisaa dinos. ma lyaai dinchhu. — Give me the money for them please. I'll bring them for you.
   linos. das rupyiāā chha. — Here's ten rupees.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩlaai ke chaahinchha ?	What do you need ?
malaai syaau chaahinchha.	I need some apples.
2. kati line ?	How many do you want ?
chhawaTaa line.	I'll take six.
3. chhawaTaako saaDhe chaar rupiyãã parchha.	It costs four and half rupees for six.
Thik chha, dinos.	That's okay. Please give them to me.
4. linos	Here, take them please.

(b)

1. tibaati jhola kinne ?	Would you like to buy Tibetan bags ?
nakinne.	No. I don't want to buy one.
2. kina ?	Why not ?
tapaaĩko pasalmaa mahango chha.	They are expensive in your store
3. mahango chhaina.	No, they are not expensive.
euTaako baara rupiyãã maatra parchha.	They only cost 12 rupees a piece.
das rupiyããmaa dine ?	Will you give me one for ten rupees ?
4. dine, la linos	O. K., take it please.

(c)

1. yo pasalmaa sisaakalam paainchha ?	Are pencils available in this store ?
paainchha. katiwaTaa line ?	Yes. How many do you want ?
2. euTaako kati parchha ?	How much does one cost ?
euTaako ek mohar parchha.	They are 50 paisa each.

3. tin waTaa dinos. khaam pani paainchha ? paainchha.	Please give me three. Do you also have envelopes ? Yes, they are available.
4. khaam das waTaa dinos. la, linos	Give me ten, please. Here, please take them.
5. jammaa kati bhayo ? dui rupiyãã bhayo.	How much is it altogether ? Two rupees.

(d)

1. amerikaamaa ããp paainchha ? paainchha.	Are mangoes available in America ? Yes.
2. tyahãã ããp sasto chha ki mahango chha ? ali ali mahango chha.	Are mangoes cheap or expensive there ? A little expensive.
3. euTaako kati parchha ? euTaako dui rupiyãã parchha.	How much does one cost ? They are two rupees a piece.
4. yahãã ni ? yahãã tin sukaa parchha.	How about here ? It costs 75 paisa here.

(e)

1. tapaaĩlaai sisaakalam chaahinchha ? chaahĩdaina.	Do you need any pencils ? No, I do not need any.
2. Dat pen ni ? DaT pen ta chaahinchha.	How about ball-point pens ? Yes, that I need.
3. linos. masããga dherai chhan. paisaa linos na ta.	Take one. I have lots of them. Here is my money.
4. paradaina.	That's not necessary.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 3, for the use of '**chaahinchha**'
2. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 4, for the use of '**parchha**'
3. '**pardaina**' — the negative of '**parchha**' used here to mean '**not necessary**'

LESSON 7

VOCABULARY

aaunu	to come	kaam	work
aghi	since, ago	kahile	when
chiTThi	letter	kasari	how
din	day	nau	nine
gaaũ	village	siknu	to learn
haami	we	thaahaa hunu	to know
haptaa	week	tyaspachhi	then (lit. after that)

PART I

1. tapaaĩ nepaalmaa kahile aaeko ?	When did you come to Nepal ?
dui haptaa bhayo.	Two weeks ago.
2. nepaalmaa kati barsa basne ?	How many years will you stay in Nepal ?
ma nepaalmaa dui barsa basne.	I will stay in Nepal for two years.
3. ani ke garne ?	What will you do then ?
ahile thaahaa chhaina.	I don't know now.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What's that ?
yo kitaab ho.	It's a book.
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?	Whose book is that ?
yo mero kitaab ho.	It's my book.

3. PaDhnos. tapaaī ke gardai hunuhunchha ?
ma paDhdai chhu.
Read it plese. What are you doing ?
I'm reading.

4. wahãã ke gardai hunuhunchha?
wahãã paDhdai hunuhunchha.
What's he (she) doing ?
He (she) is reading.

(b)

1. blyaakborD nira jaanus.
tapaaī kahãã jããdai hunuhunchha?
ma blyaakborD nira jããdai chhu.
Go to the black-board please.
Where are you going ?
I'm going to the black-board.

2. blyaakborDmaa tapaaī ko naam lekhnus.
tapaaī ke gardai hunuhunchha?
ma aaphno naam lekhdaichhu.
Please write your name on the black-board.
What are you doing ?
I'm writing my own name.

3. tapaaīle ke gareko ?
maile aaphno naam lekheko.
What did you do ?
I worte my name.

4. wahããle ke gareko ?
wahããle aaphno naam lekheko.
what did he do ?
He wrote his name.

(c)

1. bholi tapaaī kahãã jããdai hunuhunchha ?
bholi ma pokharaa jããdaichhu.
Where are you going tomorrow ?
I'm going to Pokhara.

2. kasari jããdai hunuhunchha ?
ma basmaa jããdai chhu.
How are you going ?
I'm going by bus.

3. tyahãã kati din basne?
tin din basne.
How long will you stay there ?
I'll stay for three days.

4. tyaspachhi ke garne ni ?
tyaspachhi pharkane.
After that what will you do ?
Then I'll come back.

(d)

1. kaapimaa tapaaiko naam lekhnus.	Please write your name in note-book.
tapaaī mero naam lekhdai hunuhunchha ?	Are you writing my name ?
hoina.	No, I'm not.
2. kasko naam lekhdai hunuhunchaa ta ?	Whose name are you writi then ?
ma aaphno naam lekhdaichhu.	I'm writing my own name.
3. wahãã kasko naam lekhdai hunuhunchha ?	Whose name is he writing ?
wahãã aaphno naam lekhdai hunuhunchha.	He is writing his name.

(e)

1. timi ke lekhdai chhau ?	What are you writing !
ma chiTThi lekhdaichhu.	I'm writing a letter.
2. timi kaslaai chiTThi lekhdai chhau ?	Who are you writing to ?
ma saathilaai chiTThi lekhdai chhu.	I'm writing to my friend.
3. timi nepaalimaa chiTThi lekhdai chaau ?	Are you writing the letter in Nepali ?
hoina, angrejimaa lekhdaichhu.	No, I'm writing in English.

GRAMMR NOTES

The present progressive form is used:

(a) to describe an action which is taking place currently, such as–

ma chiTThi lekhdaichhu.	I'm writing a letter.
uniharu taas kheldaichhan.	They are playing cards.

(b) to describe an action that will take place in the future though most commonly used only with the verbs '*go*' and '*come*'.

ma bholi jããdaichhu.	I'm going tomorrow.
uniharu parsi aaũdaichhan.	They are coming the day after tomorrow.

Conjugation of Present Progressive — 'lekhnu'

ma	lekhdaichhu.	I'm writing.
tã	lekhdaichhas.	you are writing.
u	lekhdaichha.	He's writing.
haami	lekhdaichhãũ.	we are writing.
timi	lekhdaichhau.	You are writing.
uniharu	lekhdaichhan.	They are writing.
tapaal	lekhdai hunuhunchha.	You are writing.

The negative of **ma gardai chhu** is **ma gardai chhaina**. This is heard but not commonly used. But another present Progressive form '**raheko**' has its negative form which is more common. It is given on page 142. tã is used by a superior to his greatly inferior such as by a father to his son or in familiar address such as among very close friends.

LESSON 8

VOCABULARY

aalu	potato	maasu	meat
bajyo	o'clock	maatra	only
		mahinaa	month
		mineT	minute
bhaasaa	language.	miThaai	sweets
bihaanako khaanaa	morning meal	paDhaaunu	to teach
bolnu	to speak	pheri	again
dekhnu	to see	ra	and
dherai jaso	mostly, usually	sadhaI	always
ghanTaa	hour	salaad	salad
ghaDi	watch	sutnu	to sleep
kahile kaahI	sometimes	uThnu	to get up
khaajaa	snack		
khelnu	to play		

PART I

1. timro naam ke ho ?
   mero naam Tim ho.

   What's your name ?
   My name is Tim.

2. timi kun bhaasaa bolchhau ?
   ma angreji bolchhu.

   What language do you speak ?
   I speak English.

3. ahile timi kun bhaasaa sikdaichhau ?
   ahile ma nepaali sikdaichhu.

   What language are you learning presently ?
   I'm learning Nepali now.

4. nepaali kati mahinaa paDhchhau ?
   tin mahinaa paDhchhu.

   For how many months will you study Nepali ?
   I'll study Nepali for three months.

PART II

(a)

1 tapaaī kati baje uThnu hunchha?	What time do you usually get up ?
ma chha baje uThchhu.	I get up at 6 o'clock.
2. kati baje sutnuhuncha ni ?	And what time do you go to bed ?
ma das baje sutchhu.	I go to bed at ten o'clock.
3. tapaaī saat baje ke garnuhunchha?	What do you do at seven o'clock?
ma saat baje chiyaa ra phul khaanchhu.	I have tea and eggs at seven o'clock.
4. tapaaī kati baje aphis jaanuhunchha.	What time do you go to the office ?
ma aaTh baje aphis jaanchhu.	I go to the office at eight o'clock.

(b)

1. tapaaīko ghar amerikaa ho ?	Are you from America ?
ho.	Yes, I am.
2. tapaaī kahãã kaam garnuhunchha ?	Where do you work ?
ma piskormaa kaam garchhu.	I work at Peace Corps.
3. ke kaam garnuhunchha ?	What kind of work do you do ?
ma paDhaaũchhu.	I teach.
4. ke pDhaaunuhunchha ?	What do yo teach ?
angreji paDhaaũchhu.	I teach English.
5. kahãã ?	Where ?
pokharaako euTaa iskulmaa.	At a school which is in Pokhara.

(c)

1. ahile kati bajyo ?	What time is it now ?
ahile pããch bajyo.	It's five o'clock.

2. timi sawaa pããch baje ke garchhau ?	What are you going to do at five fifteen ?
chiyaa khaanchhu.	I'll drink some tea.
3. phuTbal khelna kati baje jaanchhau ?	What time are you going to go to play foot-ball ?
phuTbal khelna saaDhe pããch baje jaanchhu.	I'll go to play foot-ball at five thirty.

(d)

1. tapaaĩko ghaDimaa kati bajyo ?	What time is it according to your watch ?
saat bajna bis mineT bããki chha.	It's twenty minutes to seven.
2. Deraamaa kati baje jaanuhunchha ?	What time are you going to go to your apartment ?
saat baje jaanchhu.	I'll go at seven o'clock.
3. ani ke garnuhunchha ?	What are you going to do then ?
daal bhaat khaanchhu.	I'll eat dinner.
4. kati baje sutnuhunchha ?	What time are you going to bed ?
paune das baje sutchhu.	I'll go to bed at quarter to ten.

(e)

1. tapaaĩharu klaasmaa kati baje jaanuhunchha ?	What time do you go to class ?
saat baje jaanchhaũ.	We go at seven o'clock.
2. tapaaĩko nepaali klaas kati ghanTaa hunchha ?	How long is your Nepali class ?
tin ghanTaa hunchha.	Three hours long.
3. khaanaa kati baje khaanuhunchha ?	What time do you eat ?
saaDhe das baje.	At ten thirty.

4. ani ke garnuhunchha ?	What do you do then ?
pheri nepali paDhchhaũ.	We study Nepali again.

(f)

1. amerikaaliharu bhaat khaanchhan ?	Do Americans eat boiled rice ?
khããdainan.	No, they don't.
2. ke khaanchhan ta ?	What do they eat then ?
maasu ra aalu khaanchhan	They eat meat and potato.
3. sadhaĩ maasu khaanchhan ?	Do they always eat meat ?
hoina, kahile kahĩ khaadainan.	No, sometimes they don't.
4. biyar ni ?	How about beer ?
biyar dherai jaso khaanchhan.	Yes, they usually drink beer.

(g)

1. tapaaĩ sadhaĩ raksi khaanuhunchha ?	Do you always drink raksi ?
khaanna. kahile kahĩ maatra khaanchhu.	No, I don't. I only drink it sometimes.
2. meri ni ?	How about Mary ?
kahile pani khããdaina.	She never drinks.

GRRMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of simple present tense of **'bolnu'** – to speak–

AFFIRMATIVE

ma	bolchhu	I speak
tã	bolchhas	You speak
u	bolchha	He speaks
haami	bolchhãũ	We speak
timi	bolchhau	You speak
uniharu	bolchhan	They speak
tapaaĩ	bolnuhunchha	You speak

2. kati bajyo — What time is it ?
'kati' — how much or how many ?

In the above expression the literal translation is 'how much time has past'? **'bajyo'** is the past tense of **'bajnu'** *Strike*

sawaa	a quarter past	(fifteen after)
saaDhe	half past	(——thirty)
paune	a quarter to	(fifteen to)

....bajera....mineT gayo — It is....after....
das bajera pããch mineT gayo — It's 5 minutes after 10.
....bajna....mineT bããki chha — It's.....to.....
pããch bajna das mineT bããki chha — It's 10 minutes to 5.

3. Note: Do not confuse **'baje'** and **'bajyo'**.
'bajyo' is used in questions and statements like:

kati bajyo ? — What time is it ?
saat bajyo. — It's seven o'clock.

'baje' is used in expressions like:

saat baje. — At seven o'clock.
saaDhe pããch baje. — At five thirty.

4. **'khilli'** is one cigarette. There is no English equivalent for this word.

5. **'nai'** is an emphatic particle.

ma aaja nai jaanchhu. — I'll definitely go to-day.

aajanai is sometimes contacted to **aajai**.

LESSON 9

VOCABULARY

aba	now	keraa	banana
baalnu	to light	nibhaaunu	to turn off (light)
batti	light	paaunu	to get
bidyaarthi	student	pachchis	twenty-five
chaalis	forty	phohar	dirty
hernu	to look	saphaa	clean
hijo	yesterday	tis	thirty
kaagati	lemon		

PART I

(a)

1. tapaaĩko naam ke ho ?	What's your name ?
mero naam Tim ho.	My name is Tim.
2. tapaaĩko ghar kahãã ho ?	Where are you from ?
mero ghar amerikaa ho.	I'm from the States.
3. tapaaĩ kun bhaashaa bolnuhunchha ?	What language do you speak ?
ma angreji bolchhu.	I speak English.
4. tapaaĩ ahile kun bhaashaa sikdai hunuhunchha ?	What language are you learning now ?
ma nepaali sikdaichhu.	I'm learning Nepali.
5. tapaai kati barsha hunubhayo ?	How old are you ?
ma bis barsha bhaẽ.	I'm twenty years old.

(b.)

1. wahãã kun bhaashaa bolnu-hunchha ?	What language does he speak ?
wahãã angreji bolnuhunchha.	He speaks English.
2. wahãã ke kaam garnuhunchha?	What does he do ?
wahãã pis kor swayam sewak hunuhunchha.	He is a Peace Corps Volunteer.
3. wahãã kun bhaashaa sikdai hunuhunchha ?	What language is he learning ?
wahãã nepaali sikdai hunu-hunchha.	He's learning Nepali.
4. wahãã kati barsha hunubhayo ?	How old is he ?
wahãã baais barsha hunubhayo.	He is twenty two years old.
5. wahãã kahãã basnuhunchha ?	Where does he live ?
wahãã paaTanmaa basnuhunchha.	He lives in Patan.

PART II

(a.)

1. blyaak borDnira jaanos.	Please go to the black board.
tapaaĩ kahãã jaanubhayo ?	Where did you go ?
ma blyaak borDnira gaẽ.	I went to the black board.
2. blyaakborDmaa tapaaĩko naam lekhnos.	Please write your name on the black board
tapaaĩle ke lekhnubhayo ?	What did you write ?
maile mero naam lekhẽ.	I wrote my name.
3. blyaak borD saphaa garnos.	Please erase (clean) the black board.
tapaaĩle ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do ?
maile blyaakborD saphaa garẽ.	I erased the black board.

4. wahããle ke garnu bhayo ? — What did he do ?
wahããle blyaakborD saphaa garnu bhayo. — He erased the black board.

(b)

1. kaapimaa pachchis lekhnos. — Please write 25 in your note book.
tapaaĩle tis lekhnu bhayo ? — Did you write thirty ?
lekhina. — No, I didn't.

2. kati lekhnu bhayo ta ? — How much did you write then ?
pachchislekhẽ. — I wrote twenty five.

3. wahããle chaalis lekhnubhayo ? — Did he write forty ?
ahã, lekhnubhaena. — No, he didn't.

4. kati lekhnu bhayo ta ? — How much did he write then ?
pachchis lekhnubhayo. — He wrote twenty five.

(c)

1. tyo ke ho ? — What's that ?
yo kaagati ho. — It's a lemon.

2. khaanus. — Eat it, please.
tapaaĩle ke garnubhayo ? — What did you do ?
maile kaagati khaaẽ. — I ate the lemon.

3. kaagati kasto chha ? — How is it ?
amilo chha. — It's sour.

4. aba yo keraa khaanos. — Now eat this banana, please
tapaaĩle ke khaanubhayo ? — What did you eat ?
maile keraa khaaẽ. — I ate the banana.

5. keraa amilo chha ? — Is the banana sour ?
chhaina. guiliyo chha. — No, it's not. It is sweet.

Grammar Notes

Simple past Tense–

Until now the '**eko**' form has been emphasized for the past tense. Although this form is very common you should also learn the conjugated forms for each gender.

Conjugation of SIMPLE PAST TENSE.

a) Intransitive verb *'to go'* **'jaanu'**

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaĕ	gaĩna
tã	gais	gainas
u	gayo	gaena
haami	gayaũ	gaenaũ
timi	gayau	gaenau
uniharu	gae	gaenan
tapaaĩ	jaanubhayao	jaanubhaena

b) Transitive verb *'to write'* **'lekhnu'**

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
maile	lekhe	lekhina
taĩle	lekhis	lekhinas
usle	lekhyo	lekhena
haamile	lekhyaũ	lekhenaũ
timile	lekhyau	lekhenau
uniharule	lekhe	lekhenan
tapaaĩle	lekhunubhayo	lekhnubhaena

Note– the suffix '**le**' is used for all persons when they are the subject of transitive verbs in the simple past tense.

2. kati ghanTaa khelnubhayo ? — How long did you play ?
dui ghantTaa khelẽ. — I played for two hours.

3. tapaaĩlaai thakaai laagyo ki laagena ? — Did you get tired or not ?
asaadhyai thakaai laagyo. — I got very tired.

4. ke garnu bhayo ta ? — What did you do then ?
aaraam garẽ. — I rested.

(d.)

1. hijo diũso aaunubhaena ni. — You ditn't come yesterday.
kin ? — Why ?
aaina. alchhi laagyo. — No, I didn't. I felt lazy.

2. dinbhari ke garnu bhayo ni ? — What did you do all day ?
gharmai basẽ. — I stayed at home.

3. beluki ni ? — How about in the evening ?
beluki raamkãã gaẽ. — I went to Ram's in the evening.

4. raamkãã ke garnu bhayo ? — What did you do at Ram's ?
raksi khaayaũ, taas khelyaũ. — We drank raksi and played cards.

5. tapaĩlaai raksi laagyo ki laagena ? — Did you get durnk or did you stay sober ?
ekdam laagyo. — I got very drunk.

Comprehension

ramesh koThaamaa eklai chha. u nepaali paDhdai chha. usko aamaa koThaamaa aaunu bhayo ra bhannubhayo, "ramesh ! timilaai bhok laagyo holaa. khaajaa khaana aau. rotTi chiyaa ra biskuT khaau." rameshle bhanyo, "malaai bhok laageko chhaina, aamaa. tara malaai tirkhaa laageko chha. malaai ek gilaas paani dinos". aamaale rameshlaai ek gilaas paani dinu bhayo. ani rameshle bhanyo, "aaja

ghoDe jaatraa ho. TūDikhelmaa dhumdhaam ramaailo hunchha. ma pani herna jaanchhu."

QUESTIONS—

1. ramesh koThaamaa saathisãga chha ?
2. u ke gardai chha ?
3. rameshko aamaale ke bhannubhayo ?
4. rameshlaai bhok laageho chha ?
5. rameshlaai tirkhaa laageko chha ki chhaina ?
6. rameshle ke bhanyo ?
7. aaja diũso ramesh kahãã jaancha ?
8. kina ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'ghoDe jaatraa'** is a festival of horse-racing observed only in the Kathmandu valley.
2. **'kattiko ramaailo'**— *how enjoyable, how pleasant, how nice*
3. Indiomatic usage of **'laagyo'**. This form is taken from the infinitive **'laagnu'** and in essense is used to describe *feelings, sensetions, observations or effects*.
4. When the subject is a pronoun or the name of a person in a sentence with **'laagyo'** used as described in no. 5 *above*, **'laai'** is added to it e g. **'ma'** becomes **'malaai' Dev'** becomes **'Devlaai'**. The verb form is constant throughout. Note the contexts in which it is used:

malaai bhok laagyo.	I'm hungry.
uslaai tirkhaa laagyo.	He's thirsty.
uniharulaai nidraa laagyo.	They are sleepy.
timilaai rughaa laagyo.	You have a cold.
ghaam laagyo.	The sun is out.
baadal laagyo.	It's cloudy.
malaai ringaTaa laagyo.	I feel dizzy.
haamilai jaaDo laagyo.	We're cold.
timilaai thakaai laagyo.	You're tired.

maalaai garmi laagyo.	I'm hot.
haawaa laagyo.	The wind is blowing. (It's windy)
malaai paTyaar laagyo.	I'm bored.

The negative is **laageko chhaina** formed by ' **eko chhaina**' to the verb stem '**laag**' example.

malaai tirkhaa laageko chhaina. I'm not thirsty.

LESSON 11

VOCABULARY

aaitabaar	sunday	parsi	day after tomorrow
aaune	comming, next (used as an adjective)	paune	quarter to
		roTi	bread
		shanibaar	Saturday
as	day before yesterday	sombaar	Monday
		sorha	Sixteen
baar	day	sukrabaar	Friday
bihibaar	Thursday	taarikh	date (in reference to English solar calendar)
budhabaar	Wednesday		
gaeko	gone, last (used as an adjective)	terha	thirteen
		thiẽ	was (first person)
gate	date (in reference to Nepali lunar calendar)	thiyo	was (third person and/or impersonal)
koThaa	room		
kyaalenDar	calendar		
meraa	mine (plural)		
mangalbaar	Tuesday		

PART I

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What's that ?
tyo kyaalenDar ho.	It' a calendar.
2. aaja ke baar ho ?	What day is it to-day ?
aaja sombaar ho ?	To-day is Monday.
3. hijo ke baar ho ?	What day was yesterday ?
hijo aaitabaar ho.	Yesterday was Sunday.

4. bholi ke baar ho ?	What is it tomorrow ?
bholi mangalbaar ho.	Tomorrow is Tuesday.
5. asti ke baar ho ?	What was the day before yesterday?
asti shanibaar ho.	The day before yesterday was Saturday.
6. parsi ke baar ho ?	What's day after tomorrow ?
parsi budha baar ho.	The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.

(b)

1. aaja ke baar ho ?	What day is it today ?
aaja aaitabaar ho.	To-day is Sunday.
2. aaja bihaana tapaal kati baje uThnubhayo ?	What time did you get up this morning ?
saat baje uThẽ.	I got up at seven.
3. aaja bihaana u kati baje uThyo?	What time did he get up this morning ?
u saat baje uThyo.	He got up at seven.
4. aaja bihaana tapaalle ke khaanu bhayo ?	What did you eat this morning ?
maile chiyaa ra roTi khaaẽ.	I had tea and bread.

Part II

(a)

1. Dhokaa kholnos, bab.	Bob ! Please open the door.
jim, bab ke gardaichha ?	Jim ! What's Bob doing ?
u Dhokaa kholdaichha.	He's opening the door.
2. bab ! tapaalle ke garnu bhayo ?	Bob ! What did you do ?
maile Dhokaa kholẽ.	I opened the door.

3. tapaaĩle jhyaal kholnubhayo? Did you open the window ?
hoina, maile jhyaal kholina. No, I didn't open the window.

4. wahããle jhyaal kholnubhayo? Did he open the window.
ahã, kholnubhaena. No, he didn't.

5. ke kholnubhayo ta ? What did he open then ?
Dhokaa kholnubhayo. He opened the door.

(b)

1. tapaaĩko ghar gaaũmaa ho ki shaharmaa ? Is your house in the village or in town ?
shaharmaa. In town.

2. tapaaĩko shaharko naam ke ho? What's the name of your town ?
mero shaharko naam Devis ho. The name of my town is Davis.

3. tapaaĩko shahar saphaa chha ki phohar chha ? Is your town clean or dirty ?
saphaa chha. It's clean.

4. tapaaĩko shahar Thulo chha ki saano chha ? Is your town big or small ?
saano chha. It's small.

5. tapaaĩko shaharmaa kati maanchhe baschhan ? How many people live in your town ?
andaaji chaar hajaar. About four thousand.

(c)

1. bab ra Tim ! paDhnos. Bob and Tim ! Please read.
tapaaĩharu ke gardai hunu-hunchha ? What are you doing ?
haamiharu paDhdaichhaũ. We're reading.

2. uniharu ke gardaichhan ? — What are they doing ?
   uniharu paDhdaichhan. — They are reading.
3. uniharu kasko kitaab paDhdaichhan ? — Whose book are they reading ?
   uniharu aaphno aaphno kitaab paDhadai chhan. — They are reading their own books.
4. kitaab Tebulmaa raakhnos. — Put the books on the table, please.
   uniharule ke gare ? — What did they do ?
   uniharule kitaab Tebulmaa raakhe. — They put the books on the table.
5. ahile kitaabharu kahãã chhan ? — Where are the books now ?
   ahile kitaabharu Tebulmaa chhan. — The books are on the table now.

(d)

1. yo ke ho ? — What's this ?
   yo koThaa ho. — This is a room.
2. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne? — Is this a bed room or a reading room ?
   yo paDhne koThaa ho. — It's a reading room.
3. yo kasko koThaa ho ? — Whose room is this ?
   yo haamro koThaa ho. — This is our room.
4. yo koThaa saphaa chha ki phohor chha ? — Is this room dirty or clean ?
   yo koThaa saphaa chha. — This room is clean.
5. yo koThaamaa katiwaTaa kursi chhan ? — How many chairs are there in this room ?
   yo koThaamaa terha waTaa kursi chhan. — There are thirteen chairs in this room.
6. yo koThaamaa ahile kati janaa maanchhe chhan ? — How many people are there in this room now ?
   das janaa chhan. — There are ten.

1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?
   yo kaattik mahinaa ho.

   What month is this ?
   This is the month of Kattik.

2. aaja kati gate ho ?
   aaja das gate ho.

   What's the date to-day ?
   To-day is the tenth.

3. gaeko mahinaa tapaaĩ kahãã hunuhunthyo ?
   ma amerikaamaa thiẽ.

   Where were you last month ?

   I was in the States.

4. dui mahinaa aghi u kahãã thiyo ?
   dui mahinaa aghi u amerikaamaa thiyo.

   Where was he two months ago ?

   He was in the States two months ago.

(f)

1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?
   yo sepTembar ho.

   What month is this ?
   This is September.

2. aaja kati taarikh ho ?
   aaja pandhra taarikh ho.

   What is the date to-day ?
   To-day is the fifteenth.

3. DeDh mahinaa aghi tapaaĩ nepaalmaa hunuhunthyo ?
   thiina.

   Were you in Nepal a month and half ago ?
   No, I wasn't

4. kahãã hunuhunthyo ta ?
   amerikaamaa thiẽ

   Where were you then ?
   I was in the States.

5. DeDh mahinaa aghi u nepaalmaa thiyo ?
   thiena.

   Was he in Nepal a month and half ago ?
   No, he wasn't.

6. kahãã thiyo ta ?
   u amerikaamaa thiyo.

   Where was he then ?
   He was in the States.

COMPREHENSION

aaja shanibaar ho. shyaam aaja iskul jāādaina. chhuTTi chha. u bihaana aaTh baje uThyo. usle chiyaa, roTi ra euTaa phul khaayo ani u phalphul ra tarkaari kinna bajaarmaa gayo. u bajaarmaa hīDera gaena, saaikalmaa gayo.

QUESTIONS—

1. aja ke baar ho ?
2. shyaam aaja iskul jaanchha ?
3. kina ?
4. u bihaana kati baje uThyo ?
5. usle ke ke khaayo ?
6. ani u kahāā gayo ?
7. kina ?
8. u bajaarmaa hīDera gayo ?
9. kemaa gayo ta ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Days of the week.

aaitabaar	Sunday
sombaar	Monday
mangalbaar	Tuesday
budhabaar	Wednesday
bihibaar	Thursday
shukrabaar	Friday
shanibaar	Saturday

2. Dropping the 'u' from the infinitive verb root and adding 'e' does not only result in the informal future Tense so common in conversational Nepali, but also in the common formation of descriptive adjective e. g.–**sutne koThaa, paDhne kitaab** etc.

Examples:

ROOT	PARTICIPLE		NOUN	TRANSLATION
khaanu	khaane	+	kuraa	things to eat
jaanu	jaane	+	maanchhe	the man who is going
lekhnu	lekhne	+	kalam	writing pen
siknu	sikne	+	kitaab	learning book.

LESSON 12

VOCABULARY

ããkhaa	eye	kapaal	hair (of the head)
aglaa (aglo)	tall	khairo	brown
charaa	bird	khuTTaa	leg
chhoTo	short (as opposed to long)	laamo	long
daayãã	right (as opposed to left)	sabai	all
gaai	cow	Taauko	head
hocho	short (as opposed to tall)		

PART I

1. tapaaĩ neapaal aaeko kati bhayo ?	How long have you been in Nepal ?
tin haptaa bhayo.	it's been three weeks.
2. tapaaĩ aaja bholi ke gardai hunuhunchha ?	What are you doing these days ?
ma aajabholi nepaali sikdai chhu.	I'm learning Nepali these days
3. tapaaĩ eklai sikdai hunu hunchha ?	Are you learning on your own ?
hoina, mero saathi pani sikdai chha.	No, my friend is also learning.
4. tapaaĩko saathi pani amerikaali ho ?	Is your friend also an American ?
ho.	Yes, he is.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo mero Taauko ho.	This is my head.
2. tyo ke ho ni ?	What about that ?
yo mero kapaal ho.	This is my hair.
3. tapaaĩko kapaal kaalo chha ki khairo ?	Is your hair black or brown ?
mero kapaal khairo chha.	My hair is brown.
4. tapaaĩko kapaal laamo chha ki chhoTo ?	Is your hair long or short ?
mero kapaal laamo chha.	My hair is long.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo ããkhaa ho.	This is an eye.
2. tapaaĩko katiwaTaa ããkhaa chhan ?	How many eyes do you have ?
mero duiwaTaa ããkhaa chhan.	I have two eyes.
3. tapaaĩko daayãã ããkhaa chhunos.	Touch your right eye, please.
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do ?
maile mero ããkhaa chhoẽ.	I touched my eye.
4. kun chaahĩ ããkhaa chhunubhayo?	Which eye did you touch ?
daayãã aakhaa chhoẽ.	I touched my right eye.

(e)

1. maanchheko katiwaTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ?	How many feet does a man have ?
duiwaTaa.	Two.

2. gaaiko katiwaTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ni ?
   chaarwaTaa hunchhan.
   How many feet does a cow have?
   It has four feet.
3. charaako pani chaarwatTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ?
   hũdianan.
   Does a bird also have four feet ?
   No, it doesn't.
4. katiwaTaa hunchhan ta ?
   duiwaTaa maatra.
   How many feet does it have then ?
   Only two.

(d)

1. sabai amerikaaliharu aglaa hunchhan ?
   hũdainan.
   Are all Americans tall ?
   No, they aren't.
2. tapaaĩko baa aglo hunuhunchha?
   hunuhunchha.
   Is your father tall ?
   Yes, he is.
3. tapaaĩko aamaa ni ?
   wahãã ta hocho hunuhunchha.
   How about your mother ?
   She is short.
4. tapaaĩ kati aglo hunuhunchha ?
   ma pããch phiT eghaara inch chuu.
   How tall are you ?
   I'm 5 ft. 11 inches.

(e)

1. tapaaĩko ããkhaa banda garnos.
   tapaaĩle ke garnubhayo ?
   maĩle ããkhaa banda garẽ.
   Please close your eyes.
   What did you do ?
   I closed my eyes.
2. tapaaĩko ããkhaa khulaa chhan?
   chhainan.
   Are your eyes open?
   No, they are not.
3. ããkhaa kholnos.
   tapaaĩle ke garnubhayo ?
   maĩle ããkhaa kholẽ.
   Open your eyes, please.
   What did you do ?
   I opened my eyes.

4. wahãākaa āākhaa khulaa chhan ki banda chhan ? — Are his eyes open or closed ?
   khullaa chhan. — They are open.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'chhu'** is the present tense first person, sigular from of the verb *'to be'* **hunu** !. It is conjugated as follows–

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	chhu	chhaina
tã	chhas	chainas
u	chha	chhaina
haami	chhaũ	chhainaũ
timi	chhau	chhainau
uniharu	chhan	chhainan
tapaaĩ	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

2. Note the difference:

I	am	here	—	ma yahãã **chhu.**
I	am	Ram	—	ma raam hũ.

3. **'chha' and 'hunchha'**–

In the sentence **'usko euTaa Taauko chha'** (*He has one head*), **'chha'** is used to express the idea of possession or *to have*. **'hunchha'** in the sentence *'charaako duiTaa khuTTaa* **hunchha'** (*Birds have two legs*) is used in the same way, However, the difference is that **'chha'** is used when stating specifics whereas **'hunchha** is used for making generalization. Study the following examples.

jim aglo chha. — Jim (specific person) is tall.
amerikaaliharu aglaa hunchhan. — Americans (in general) are tall.

LESSON 13

VOCABULARY

baneko	made	galaïchhaa	carpet
barsha	year	kaarkhaanaa	factory
bihaa	wedding marriage	kunni	don't know
		pariwaar	family
chhoraa	son	saya	hundred
chhori	daughter		

PART I

(a)

1. tapaaïko pariwaarmaa kati janaa chhan ? pããch janaa.	How many people are there in your family ? Five.
2. ko ko ? baa, aamaa, bhaai, bahini ra ma.	Who are they ? Father, mother, younger brother. younger sister, and myself.
3. tapaaïko baa ke kaam garnuhunchha ? kalejmaa paDhaaunu hunchha.	What does your father do ? He teaches in a college.
4. tapaaïko bhaai ke garchha ni ? iskulmaa paDhchha.	What does your younger brother do ? He goes to school.
5. bahini ni ? u pani iskulmaa paDhchha.	How about your younger sister ? She also goes to school.

(b)

1. timro daai hunuhunchha ?	Do you have an elder brother ?
hunuhunchha.	Yes, I do.
2. wahãã kahãã hunuhunchha ?	Where is he ?
wahãã Devismaa hunuhunchha.	He is in Davis.
3. wahãã ke kaam garnu-hunchha ?	What does he do ?
wahãã kaarkhaanaamaa kaam garnu hunchha.	He works in a factory.
4. wahãã kati barsha hunu bhayo?	How old is he ?
wahãã paĩtis barsha hunubhayo	He is thirty five years old.
5. wahããko bihaa bhayo ?	Is he married ?
bhayo.	Yes, he is.
6. chhoraa chhori chhan ki chaainan ?	Does he have any children ?
chhan.	Yes, he does.
7. katijanaa chhan ?	How may does he have ?
ekjanaa chhori ra duijanaa chhoraa.	One daughter and two sons.

PART II

(a)

1. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne?	Is this a bed room or a reading room ?
sutne.	It's a bed-room.
2. yo koThaamaa kati janaa sutchhan ?	How many people sleep in this room ?
duijanaa sutchhan	Two people sleep in this room.

3. tapaaĩ pani yo koThaamaa sutnuhunchha ?	Do you also sleep in this room ?
sutdina.	No, I don't.
4. bill sutchha ta ?	Does Bill sleep here, then ?
u pani sutdaina.	No, he doesn't sleep here either.
5. ko sutchha ta ?	Who sleeps here, then
Tam ra maaik.	Tom and Mike.

(b)

1. tapaaĩko galaĩchha nayãã ho ki puraano ?	Is your carpet new or old ?
puraano.	It's old.
2. kahãã baneko ?	Where was it made ?
solukhumbumaa.	In Solukhumbu.
3. tapaaĩle kahile kinnu bhayo ?	When did you buy it ?
tin barsha bhayo.	Three years ago.
kati liyo ?	How much did you pay for it ?
chaar saya.	Four hundred.

(c)

1. yo chij kahãã baneko ho ?	Where was this cheese made ?
jirimaa.	In Jiri.
2. yo keko dudhbaaTa baneko ho ?	What kind of milk is it made from ?
chaũri gaaiko dudhbaaTa.	It's made from yak's milk.
3. yasto chij kaaThmaanDumaa kahãã paainchha ?	Where can you get this kind of cheese in Kathmandu ?
niuroDmaa.	In New Road.
4. ek kiloko kati parchha?	How much does a k.g. cost ?
kunni, malaai thaahaa chhaina.	I don't know.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. a) **'tapaaĩ kati barsha hunubhayo ?"**—(lit. *How many years did you become ?*) is one of the ways of asking someone's age. The verb is conjugated according to the pronoun in the subject. For examples—

u kati barsha bhayo ?	How old is he ?
timi kati barsha bhayau ?	How old are you ?
ma kati barsha bhaẽ ?	How old am I ?

b) **taapaaĩko umer kati bhayo?"** is another common way of asking the same question The verb **'bhayo'** in this sentence is not conjugated and therefore remains the same irrespective of the pronoun because the subject is **'umer'** not the pronoun.

2. **'wahããko bihaa bhayo ?"** *Is he married ?*
As in (d) above, the verb **'bhayo'** is not conjugated regardless of the pronoun-

mero bihaa bhayo.	(neg. mero bihaa bhaeko chhaina)
usko bihaa bhayo.	(neg. usko bihaa bhaeko chaina)
timro bihaa bhayo.	(neg. timro bihaa bhaeko chaaina)

3. **'sutne ko'haa'** 'sutne' in this experession is an infinitival participle used as a descriptive adjective. This is very common in Nepali.

khaanekuraa food stuffs	(lit. eating things)
kaamgarne maanche–worker	(lit. working man)
bokne maanchhe porter	(lit. carrying man)

4. **kati liyo ?** (lit. *How much did (he) take?*) is ono of the ways of asking *'How much did it cost*

Here are some of the other equally common ways of asking the same question–

kati paryo ?	(lit-How much did it fall ?)
kati dinu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you give ?)
kati tirnu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you pay ?)
kati haalnu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you put?)

LESSON 14

VOCABULARY

andaaji	approximately, about	kahilepani	never
		khel	game
dubai	both	man laagnu	to want
ekdam	very much (emphatic)	man parnu	to like
himaal	mountain(with snow)	taal	tlake
jaannu	to know	tyatikaa	that much, as much as that
jhanDai	almost, not quite		

PART I

1. tapaaĩ nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?	How long have you been in Nepal ?
jhanDai dui mahinaa bhayo.	It's been almost two months.
2. tapaaĩ kasari aaunubhayo ?	How did you come ?
hawaaijahaajmaa aaẽ.	I came by plane.
3. tapaaĩko ghar dekhi yahãã samma aauna kati Dalar laagchha ?	How much does it cost to come here from your home ?
andaaji nau saya Dalar.	It costs bout nine hundred dollars.
4. tapaaĩlaai tyatikaa paisaa kasle diyo ?	Who gave you that much money ?
mero aphisle.	My office.
5. tapaaĩ kun aphismaa kaam garnu hunchha ?	At which office do you work ?
ma piskor aphismaa kaam garchhu.	I work at the Peace Corps office.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩ pokharaamaa jaanu bhayo ?	Did you go to Pohhara ?
ma pokharaamaa gaẽ.	Yes, I went to Pohhara.
2. kasarĩ jaanu bhayo ?	How did you go ?
hawaaijahaajmaa gaẽ.	I went by plane.
3. tapaaĩlaai pokharaa man paryo?	Did you lihe Pokhara?
ho, dherai man paryo.	Yes, I liked it very much.
4. pokharaamaa ke ke man paryo?	What did you like in Pokhara ?
himaal ra taal man paryo.	I liked the mountains and the lake.

(b)

1. timilaai sabbhandaa kun khel man parchha ?	Which game do you like the best ?
malaai phuTbal man parchha.	I like soccer (foot-baall).
2. aru ke man parchha ?	What else do you like ?
baaskeTabal pani man parcha.	I also like basketball.
3. Tenis ni ?	How about Tennis ?
Tenis man pardaina.	I don't like Tennis.
4. kina ?	Why ?
kinabhane ma Tenis khelna jaandina.	Because I don't know how to play Tennis.

(c)

1. timilaai biyar man parchha ?	Do you like beer ?
man parchha.	Yes, I do.

2. raksi ni ? raksi ta man pardaina.	How about home-made liquor ? I don't like it.
3. timi biyar sadhai khaanchhau? ahã khanna, kahile kaahi khaanchhu.	Do you always drink beer ? I don't drink it always. I drink sometimes.
4. raksi ni ? raksi ta kahilepani khaanna.	How about raksi ? I never drink raksi.
5. tapaaĩko saathilaai raski man parchha ki biyar man parchha? uslaai dubai man parchha.	What does your friend like? Raksi or beer ? He likes both.

(d)

1. hijo tapaaĩlaai ke khaana man laagyo ? hijo malaai momo khaana man laagyo .	What did you feel like eating yesterday ? I felt like eating momos yesterday.
2. tapaaĩ momo khaana jaanu bhayo ta ? ho, gaẽ.	Did you go and eat momos then ? Yes, I did.
3. momo khaana tapaaĩ kahãã jaanu bhayo ? om resTurããmaa gaẽ.	Where did you go to eat momos ? I went to Om Restaurant.
4. tyahãã momo kasto laagyo ? miTho laagyo.	How did you like the momos there? I liked it.
5. aru ke ke khaanubhayo ? aru kehi paĩi khaaĩna.	What else did you have ? That was all. I had nothing else.

(e)

1. hijo diũso ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do yesterday afternoon ?
hindi sinemaa herna gaẽ.	I went to see a Hindi movie ?

2. kun sinemaa hernubhayo ? haathi meraa saathi.	Which movie did you see ? Hathi mera Sathi.
3. man paryo ta ? ekdam man paryo.	Did you like it ? I liked it very much.
4. beluki khaanaa baahira khaanu bhayo ki gharmaa ? baahira khaaẽ.	Did you eat out or at home yesterday evening ? I ate out.
5. kina ni ? hijo jaapaani khaanaa khaana man laagyo.	Why ? I wanted to have japanese food yesterday.
6. kasto laagyo ta ? tyattiko man parena.	How did you like it ? I didn't like it that much.

(f)

1. timi hijo kina klaasmaa aaenau?	Yesterday why didn't you come to class ?
malaai nepaali paDhna man laagena.	I didn't feel like learning Nepali.
2. kina ? kinabhane malaai alchhi laageko thiyo .	Why not ? Because I felt lazy
3. ahile paDhna man laageko chha ta ?	Do you feel like having class now?
ahile ta man laageko chha.	Yes, I feel like it.
4. kati ghanTaa samaa paDchhau?	How many hours are you going to study.
dui ghanTaa samma paDhchhu holaa.	For two hours probably.

GRAMMAR NOTES.

1. **'man parnu'** is another impersonal verb.

   The subject of a sentence with **'man parnu'** always takes **'laai'**.

Examples.

malaai raksi man pardaina.	I don't like raksi.
mero baalaai daal bhaat man parchha.	My father likes daal-bhaat.
timilaai ke man parchha ?	What do you like ?

The personal from of **'man parnu'** is **'man paraaunu'**. **'man paraaunu'** also means *'to like'* but this from is conjugated according to the pronouns.

For Example

ma suntalaa man paraaũchhu.	I like oranges.
u suntalaa man paraauchha.	He likes oranges.

Note that **'laai'** is not used in the above examples.

Note: The impersonal and personal forms of **'man parnu'** can be used interchangeably depending on the speaker's preference. Generally though, the impersonal form is more frequently heard.

2. **man laagnu'** is similar to **'man parnu'** and therefore the subject again requires **'laai'**

LESSON 15

VOCABULARY

belaayet	Britain	saathi	friend
gaaũ	village	shahar	city
hũ	am	sanga	with
kaam garnu	to work	sawyam sewak	volunteer

PART I

1. tapaaĩko ghar kahãã ho ? — Where are you from ?
   amerĩkaa. — America.
2. tapaaĩ nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ? — How long has it been since you came to Nepal ?
   ma nepaalmaa aaeko tin haptaa bhayo. — It has been three weeks.
3. yahãã ke kaam garnu hunchha? — What do you do here ?
   ma piskor swayam sewak hũ. — I am a Peace Corps volunteer.
4. tapaaĩ yahãã kati basnuhunchha? — How long will you stay here ?
   ma dui barsha baschhu. — I'll stay here for two years.
5. gaaũmaa basnu hunchha ki shaharmaa ? — Are you going to live in a village or in a city ?
   gaaũmaa. — In a village

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩsanga kitaab chhan ? — Do you have any books with you ?
   masanga kitaab chhan. — Yes, I've books with me.

2. tapaaĩsanga katiwaTaa kitaab chhan ?	How many do you have ?
masanga duiTaa kitaab chhan.	I have two books.
3. tapaaĩsanga kalam chha ki chhaina ?	Do you have a pen with you or not ?
masanga kalam chha.	Yes, I do.
4. katiwaTaa ?	How many ?
euTaa maatra.	Only one.

(b)

1. tapaaĩkc moTar chha ?	Do you have a car ?
mero moTar chhaina.	No, I don't have a car.
2. taapaaĩ kasari aphis jaanuhun-chha ?	How do you go to the office ?
saaikalmaa.	On a bicycle.
3. tapaaĩko saaikal kahãã baneko?	Where was your bicycle made ?
inDiyaamaa.	In India.
4. kati liyo ?	How much did it cost ?
saat saya rupiyãã.	Seven hundred rupees.

(c)

1. tapaaĩsanga ghaDi chha ?	Do you have a watch ?
masanga ghaDi chha.	Yes, I have a watch.
2. tapaaĩko ghaDi kahãã baneko ho ?	Where was your watch made ?
mero ghaDi jaapaanmaa baneko ho.	My watch was made in Japan.
3. tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ?	How much does that watch cost ?
tis Dalar parchha	It cost thirty dollars.

4. tapaaĩle tyo ghaDi kahãã kinnubhayo ?	Where did you buy that watch ?
hangkangmaa kinẽ.	I bought my watch in Hong-kong.

(d)

1. timro Deraa kahãã chha ?	Where is your place ?
paaTanmaa.	It's in Patan.
2. timisanga ko ko baschhan ?	Who else lives with you ?
masanga mero duijanaa saathi baschhan.	Two friends of mine live there With me.
3. uniharuko ghar kahãã ho ni ?	Where are they from ?
ek janaako belaayet ra ek janaako amerika ho.	One is from Britain and the other one is from America.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'sanga and ko'** both express the idea of possession or *'to have'*. However, there is distinct difference between them in common usage. For example.

a) **'ma sanga chha'** means *'I have with me,'* in my possession at the moment, masanga churoT chha. - I have cigarettes with me now. masanga salaai chhaina. - I don't have any malches with me now.

ma sanga das rupiyaa maatra chha.	I've only ten rupees with me.

b) **'mero chha'** means *I have one, own one'*, but it could be anywhere, not necessarily with me at the time.

mero ghar chhaina.	I don't have a house.
mero ããkhaa chhan.	I have eyes.
mero gaai chha.	I have a cow.

Note- **'sanga'** cannot be used in the examples given in (b) above.

LESSON 16

VOCABULARY

aghi	ago	samma	until, up to
dekhi	from	TurisT	tourist
pugnu	to be enough	umaaleho	boiled

PART I

1. wahãã ko hunuhunchha ? — Who is he ?
   wahãã Tam hunuhunchha. — That's Tom.
2. wahããko ghar kahãã ho ni ? — Where is his home ?
   wahããko ghar amerikaa ho. — His home is in America.
3. wahãã TurisT hunuhunchha ? — Is he a tourist ?
   hoina, wahãã pani swayam sewak hunnuhunchha — No, he is also a volunteer.
4. wahãã kahile nepaal aaeko ? — When did he come to Nepal ?
   dui haptaa aghi. — Two weeks ago.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo kasko kalam ho ? — Whose pen is that ?
   yo mero kalam ho. — This is my pen.
2. tapaaiko kalam kasto chha ? — What color is your pen ?
   mero kalam kaalo chha. — My pen is black.
3. tapaaiko naam lekhnos. — Write your name, please.
   tapaaile ke garnubhayo ? — What did you do ?
   maile aaphno naam lekhẽ. — I wrote my name.

4. wahāāle ke garnu bhayo ?	What did he do ?
wahāāle aaphno naam lekhnu bhayo.	He wrote his name.

(b)

1. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?	Whose shoulder-bag is that ?
yo mero jholaa ho.	It's my bag.
2. tapaaĩko jholaa kasto chha ?	What is your bag like ?
mero jholaa rangi-changi chha.	My bag is multi-colored.
3. tapaaĩko jholaa phohar chha ?	Is your bag dirty ?
chhaina, saphaa chha.	No, it.s clean.
4. tapaaĩko jholaa saano chha ki Thulo chha ?	Is your bag small or big ?
saano chha.	It's small.

(c)

1. timiharu kitaab paDha.	Read your books.
timiharu ke gardaichhau ?	What are you doing ?
haamiharu paDhdaichhaũ.	We are reading.
2. uniharu ke gardaichhan ?	What are they doing ?
uniharu paDhdaichhan.	They are reading.
3. pugyo.	That's enough.
timiharule ke garyau ?	What did you do ?
haamiharule paDhyaũ.	We read the books.

(d)

1. jhyaal banda garnos.	Close the window, please.
tapaaĩle Dhokaa banda garnu bhayo ?	Did you close the door ?

hoina, maile Dhohaa banda garina.	No, I dodn't close the door.
2. ke garnubhayo ta ?	What did you do then ?
maile jhyaal banda garẽ.	I closed the window.
3. wahããle Dhokaa banda garnubhayo ?	Did he close the door ?
hoina, wahããle Dhokaa banda garnu bhaena.	No, he didn't close the door.
4. ke garnubhayo ta ?	What did he do then ?
wahããle jhyaal banda garnubhayo.	He closed the window.

Comprehension

Devko ghar amerika hoo. dui haptaa aghi u nepal aayo. u angreji bolchha. ahile u nepaali sikdaichha. Dev saat bajedekhi nau baje samma nepaali sikcha, diũso baarha baje u khaanaa khaana hoTelmaa jaanchha. u daal bhaat khããdaina. u roTi tarkaari maasu ra dudh khaanchha. u maaleko paani maatra khaanchha.

Questions –

1. Devko ghar amerikaa ho ?
2. u kahile nepaal aayo ?
3. u kun bhaashaa bolchha ?
4. ahile u kun bhaashaa sikdaichha ?
5. u kati bajedekhi kati bajesamaa nepaali sikchha ?
6. Dev diũso baarha baje kina hoTelmaa jaanchha ?
7. u daal bhaat khaanchha ?
8. u ke ke khaanchha ?
9. u kasto paani khaanchha ?
10. tapaaĩ kasto paani khaanuhunchha ?

NOTES

1. The Nepali word for *'tourist'* is *paryaTak'* but the English word is also commonly used.

2. **'dekhi'** implies *'since'* or *'from'* and is used as follows:

uniharu aaTh bajedekhi nepaali paDhchhan.	They study Nepali from eight o'clock on.
u hijodekhi biraami chha.	He's been sick since yesterday.

'dekhi' is also used in other instances. Examples will be found in later lessons.

3. **'baaTa'** means *'from'* but in a different sense than **'dekhi.**

Note the following:

yo bas paaTanbaaTa aaũchha.	This bus comes from Patan.
ma gharbaaTa aaũdaichu.	I'm coming from my home.

4. **'samma"** – *'to until, up to, as far as'.*

yo bas bhaktapursamma jaanchha.	This bus goes as far as Bhaktapur.
haami pããch baje samma kaam garchhaũ	We work until five o'clock.

LESSON 17

VOCABULARY

bajai	grandmother	lugaa	dress, clothes
dahi	yogurt	nayãã	new
kolaagi	for	phalphul	fruit
khukuri	Gorkha knife	puraano	old

PART I

1. aaja ke baar ho ?	What day is it today ?
aaja sombaar ho.	Today is Monday.
2. yo kun mahinaa ho ?	What month is this ?
yo mangsir mahinaa ho.	This is the month of Mangsir.
3. aaja kati gate ho ?	What is the date to day?
aaja bis gate ho.	Today is the 20th.
4. bholi kati gate ho ?	What is the date tomorrow ?
bholi ekkaais gate ho.	Tomorrow is the 21st.
5. parsi ni ?	What about the day after tomorrow?
parsi baais gate ho.	The day after tommorrow is the 22nd

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩsanga kalam chha ?	Do you have a pen ?
chha.	Yes, I do.
2. kalam keko laagi ho ?	What is a pen for ?
kalam lekhnako laagi ho.	For writing

3. tapaaĩko naam lekhnos.	Write your name please.
tapaaĩle ke lekhnubhayo ?	What did you wirte ?
maile naam lekhẽ.	I wrote my name.
4. wahããle ke garnubhayo ?	What did he do ?
wahããle naam lekhunubhayo.	He wrote his name.
5. wahããle tapaaĩko naam lekhnubhayo ?	Did he write your name ?
hoina, wahããle mero naam lekhnubhaena.	No, he didn't write my name.
6. wahããle kasko naam lekhnu bhayo ta ?	Whose name did he write then ?
wahããle aaphno naam lekhunubhayo.	He wrote his own name.

(b)

1. tapaaĩsanga kitaab chha ?	Do you have a book ?
chha.	Yes, I do.
2. kitaab keko laagi ho ?	What is a book for ?
paDhnako laagi.	For reading.
3. paDhnus.	Please read.
tapaaĩle ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do ?
maile paDhẽ	I read the book.
4. tapaaĩle ke paDhnubhayo ?	What did you read ?
maile kitaab paDhẽ.	I read the book.
5. tapaaĩle mero kitaab paDhnu-bhayo ?	Did you read my book. ?
hoina, maile tapaaĩko kitaab paDhina.	No, I didn't read your book.
6. kasko kitaab paDhnubhayo ta ?	Whose book did you read, then ?
maile mero kitaab paDhẽ.	I read my book.

(c)

1. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?	Whose shoulder bag is that ?
yo mero jholaa ho.	This is my bag.
2. tapaaiko jholãã puraano chha?	Is your bag old ?
chhaina, nayaa chha.	No, it's new.
3. tyo jholaa paDhnako laagi ho?	Is that bag for reading ?
hoina.	No, it's not.
4. keko laagi ho ta ?	What is it for then ?
chij-bij raakhnalaai.	To put things into.
5. tapaai jholaamaa ke raakhnu-hunchha ?	What do you put in your bag ?
mero kitaab, kaapi ra kalam.	My book, copy and pen.

(d)

1. aaja belukaako laagi maasu chha.	Do we have meat for this evening?
chha.	Yes, we do.
2. yo dahi kahileko laagi ho ni ?	When is this yogurt for ?
tyo aaj diũsokolaagi ho.	That's for this afternoon.
3. diusokolaagi phal phul chhaina?	Don't we have fruit for this afternoon ?
chha.	Yes, we do.
4. ke ke chha ?	What do we have ?
syaau, suntalaa ra keraa.	We have apples, oranges and bananas.

(e)

1. yo jho aa kasko laagi kinnu-bhayo ?	Who did you buy this bag for ?
mero bahiniko laagi.	For my younger sister.

2. tapaaĩko baako laagi ke kinnubhayo ta ?	What did you buy for your father?
euTaa khukuri kine.	I bought a Gorhha knife.
3. aamaako laagi ni ?	How about for your mother ?
aamaako laagi tibbati lugaa.	A Tibetan dress for my mother.
4. tyo galaĩchha kasko laagi ho ni?	Who is that carpet for then ?
yo mero bajaiko laagi ho.	This is for my grandmother.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'gate'** or ***the date'*** **is udsed to ask the Nepali date according to the lunar calendar.**

aaja kati gate ho ?	What is the Nepalse date to-day ?

'taarikh– **although a Hindi word, it is used to ask the date according to the English calendar.**

aaja kati taarikh ho ?	What is the date today ?
aaj pããch taarikho	Today is the fifth.

2. **ko laagi.**

(a) It is generally used in the same manner as *'for'* in English:

mero laagi	for me
baako laagi	for father

(b) When used in time conext also, it means the same as *'for'* in English.

ma tin haptaakolaagi pohharaa jaanchhu.	I'm going to Pohhara for three weeks.

NOTE—**'ko laagi.** **is often shortened to 'laai..**

khaana ho laagi	khaanalaai
baako laagi	baalaai
ek mahinaako laagi	eh mahinaalaai

LESSON 18

VOCABULARY

agaaDi	in front of	najik	near
anchal	zone	najikai	nearby
baaTo	road, path, trail	naksaa	map
chakki	tablet		
chin	China	paschim	west
dakchhin	south	pachhaaDi	behind
desh	country	paTak	times
hiDera	on foot	purba	east
jati	about	saDah	road
kataatira ?	in what direction	uttar	north

PART I

1. tapaaĩko Deraa kahãã chha ? — Where is your apartment ?
   gyaaneswarmaa. — It's in Gyaneswar.
2. yahããbaaTa najik chha ki TaaDhaa chha ? — Is it close by or far from here ?
   najik chha. — It's close by.
3. saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? — How long does it take by bicycle ?
   das mineT. — Ten minutes.
4. hĩDera kati mineT laagchha ni? — How many minutes does it take by foot ?
   karib pandhra mineT. — About fifteen minutes.
5. tapaaĩ hĩDera jaanu hunchha ki saaikalmaa ? — Do you walk or go by bicycle ?
   dherai jaso hĩDera jaanchhu. — I usualy walk

PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?	What is that ?
yo naksaa ho.	This is a map.
2. tyo kun deshko naksaa ho ?	Of which country ?
yo nepaalko naksaa ho.	This is a map of Nepal.
3. ilaam kataatira parchha ?	What direction is Ilam in ?
ilaam purbatira parchha.	Ilam is in the east.
4. jumlaa kataatira parchha ?	What direction is Jumla in ?
jumlaa paschimtira parchha.	Jumlaa is in the west.
5. mustaang kataatira parchha ?	What direction is Mustang in ?
mustaang uttartira parchha.	Mustang is in the north.
6. birganj kataatira parchha ?	What direction is Birgunj in ?
birganj dakchhinmaa parchha ?	Birgunj is in the south.

(b)

1. nepaalko purbammaa kun desh parchha ?	Which country is east of Nepal ?
nepaalko purbamaa inDiyaa parchha.	India is east of Nepal.
2. nepaalko paschimmaa kun desh parchha ni ?	Which country is west of Nepal.?
nepaalko pashchimmaa pani inDiyaa parchha.	India is also the west of Nepal.
3. nepaalko uttarmaa kun desh parchha ?	Which country is north of Nepal ?
nepaalko uttarmaa chin parchha.	China is north of Nepal.
4. dakchhinmaa ni ?	How about in the south ?
inDiyaa parchha..	India.

(c)

1. pokharaa kun anchalmaa parchha ?	Which zone is Pohhara in ?
pokharaa ganDaki anchalmaa parchha.	Pohhara is in Gandahi zone.
2. kaaThmaanDu pani ganDaki anchalmaa parchha ?	Is Kathmandu also in Gandaki zone ?
pardaina.	No, itn't.
3. kun anchalmaa parchha ta ?	Which is it in then ?
baagmati anchalmaa parchha.	It's in Bagmati zone.
4. paaTan ni ?	How about Patan ?
paaTan pani baagmati anchalmaa parchha.	Patan is also in Bagmati zone.

(d)

1. tapaaiko ghar kun raajyamaa parchha ?	Which state are you from ?
mero ghar Teksaasmaa parchha.	I'm from Texas.
2. Teksaas uttartira parchha ki dakchhintira parchha ?	Is Texas in the north or south ?
Teksaas dakchhintira parchha.	Texas is in the south.
3. TeksaasbaaTa siyaaTal najik parchha ?	Is Seattle close to Texas ?
pardaina, dherai TaaDhaa parchha.	No, it isn't. It's very far.
4. siyaaTal jaana relmaa kati din laagchha ?	How many days does it take to get to Seattle by train ?
dui din laagchha holaa.	It takes about two days.

(e)

1. tapaaĩko Deraa kahããnira parchha ?	Where is your apartment ?
2. solTi hoTelnira.	Near the Solatee Hotel.
2. solTi hoTelbaaTa kati mineT laagchha ?	How many minutes does it take to get there from the Soaltee ?
tin minetT jati laagchha.	It takes about three minutes.
3. baaTobaaTa debretira parchha ki daahinetira ?	Is it on the left or right of the road ?
daahinetira parchha.	It's on the right.
4. taapaaĩko gharkopachhaaDike chha ?	What's behind your house ?
khet chha.	There's a rice field.
5. agaaDi ni ?	And in the front ?
agaaDi saDak chha.	There's a road in the front.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. In this lesson, **laagnu.** is used for inquiring and stating the amount of time required to do something:

saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? How many minutes does it take by bicycle ?

Note that in the preceding lessons **'laagnu.** was used when referring to the cost of something and when describing feelings or sensations. There are still more uses of **'laagnu'** which will be dealt with in later lessons.

'laagnu' is usually used as an impersonal verb. However, in some contexts it can also function as a personal one.

ma ghartira laagẽ.	I am on my way home.
haami ghartira laagyaũ	we are on our way home.

u ghartira laagyo.	He's on his way home.
uniharu ghartira laage.	They are on their way home.
timi ghartira laagyau.	You are on your way home.
tapaaĩ ghartira laagnubhayo.	You (hon) are on your way home.

In this sense **'laagnu'** is describing specifically the intention or pre-indication *o going home.*

2. **'parnu'**– literally means *'to fall'* as of *'rain'*. However, in this lesson it is used to indicate direction or location.

ebharesT nepaalmaa parchha.	Everest lies in Nepal.
pokharaa paschimmaa parchha.	Pokhara is in the west.

Note the difference in the two meanings of **'parnu'** that have been introduced so far.

'tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ?	How much does that watch cost ?
ilaam kataatira parchna ?	Which direction is Ilam in ?

'parnu' as **'laagnu'** functions both as personal and an impersonal verb. It is shown functioning as an impersonal verb in the examples given in this lesson as well as in lesson 13. Its personal usages will be given in later lessons: Study the following examples

dhankuTaa purba parchha.	Dhankuta is in the east.
dhankuTaa purbamaa parchha.	" " "
dhankuTaa purbatira parchha.	Dhankuta is towards east
dhankuTaa purbapaTTi parchha.	" " "

LESSON 17

VOCABULARY

bhaat	cooked-rice	eklai	alone
chamchaa	spoon	haat	hand
chiniyãã	Chinese	jhiknu	to take out
daal	lentils	kããTaa	fork

PART I

1. tapaaĩ kahãã basnuhunchha ? — Where do you live ?
   ma paaTanmaa baschhu. — I live in Patan.
2. eklai ki saathisanga ? — Do you live alone or with friends ?
   eklai. — Alone.
3. paaTanbaaTa yahãã kasari aaunuhunchha ? — How do you come here from Patan ?
   basmaa aaũchhu. — By bus.
4. basmaa kati mineT laagchha ? — How long does it take by bus ?
   pandhra mineT laagchha. — It takes fifteen mimutes.

PART II

1. tapaaĩ daal bhaat khaanu hunchha ki khaanuhunna ? — Do you eat rice or not ?
   khaanchhu. — Yes, I do.
2. tapaaĩ kele daalbhaat khaanu hunchha ? — How do you eat rice ?
   ma haatle daal bhaat khaanchhu. — I eat rice with my hand.
3. wahãã kele daalbhaat khaanu hunchha ? — What does he eat rice with ?
   wahãã haatle daalbaat khaanu-hunchha. — He eats rice with his hand.

4. tapaaI kele chiniyãã khaanaa khaanuhunchha ?
kããTaa chamchaale.

How do you eat your Chinese food ?
With a fork and a spoon.

(b)

1. tapaaIko kalam kahãã chha ?
mero kalam khaltimaa chha.

Where is your pen ?
My pen is in my pocket.

2. jhiknos.
tapaaIle ke garnubhayo ?
maile kalam jhikẽ.

Plese take it out.
What did you do ?
I took out my pen.

3. tapaaIko naam lekhnos.
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?
maile naam lekhẽ.

Write your name, please
What did you do ?
I wrote my name.

4. tapaIale kele naam lekhnubhayo ?
maile kalamle naam lekhẽ.

What did you wirte your name with ?
I wrote my name with my pen.

5. tapaaIle mero nam lekhnu bhayo?
hoina, lekhina.

Did you wirte my name ?
No, I didn't.

6. kasko naam lekhnubhayo ta ?
maile mero naam lekhẽ.

Whose name did you write then ?
I wrote my name.

(c)

1. hijo tapaaIle kaslaai chiTThi lekhnubhayo ?
maile baalaai chiTThi lekhẽ.

Who did you write the letter to, yesterday ?
I wrote the letter to my father.

2. aaja bihaana tapaaIle kaslaai chiTThi lekhnubhayo ?
aaja bihaana maile bhaailaai chiTThi lekhẽ.

Who did you write a letter to, this morning ?
I wrote a letter to my younger brother this morning.

3. tapaaIle aaja didilaai chiTThi lekhnubhayo ?

Did you write to your elder sister to-day ?

lekhina.	No, I didn't.
4. tapaaĩle didilaai kahile chiTThi lekhnubhayo ta ?	When did you wirte to your elder sister ?
maile didilaai ek haptaa aghi chiTThi lekhẽ.	I wrote to my elder sister one week ago.

GRAMMAR NOTES

ma haatle daal bhaat khaanchhu.	I eat rice with my hand.

'le' in the above example is used to identify the agent or to mark the instrument with which an action is done.

Other usages of 'le'–

a) 'le' is used with the subject of all transitive verbs as in the following:

1) the simple past tense

maile bhaat khaaẽ.	I ate rice.
usle chiTThi lekhyo.	He wrote a letter.
timile kitaab paDhyau.	You read a book.

2) the first and second participles.

a) maĩle gareko chhu.	I have done.
usle khaaeko chhaina.	He has not eaten.
b) usle kitaab paDhechha.	He has read the book. (I noticed it)
timile paisaa chorechhau.	You have stolen money. (It has been discovered)

b) 'le' is not used on the subject of intransitive verb–

ma gaẽ.	**not**	maile gaẽ.
u basyo.	**not**	usle basyo.

Other usages of **'le'** will appear in later lessons.

2. **'laai'** is used to denote the object of a sentence. It should always be used with the object when it is a person or a pronoun.

maile baalaai chiTThi lekhẽ.	I wrote a letter to my father.
raamle uslaai das rupiyãã diyo.	Ram gave him ten rupees.

It should not be used on non-animate objects.

maile kitaab kine not maile kitaab laai kine.

LESSON 20

VOCABULARY

aDhaai	two and half	kukhuraa	chicken
bidaa	holiday	mandir	temple
chiDiyaa khaanaa	zoo	phul	egg
DeDh	one and half	saaThi	sixty
gaarho	difficult	sajilo	easy
jhanDai	almost	sattari	seventy

PART I

(a)

1. tapaaĩ nepaal aaeko kati bhayo?	How long ago did you come to Nepal ?
jhanDai ek mahinaa bhayo.	It's been almost a month.
2. nepaalmaa kasari aaunu bhayo ni ?	How did you come to Nepal ?
hawaai jahaajmaa.	I came by plane.
3. kati din laagyo ?	How many days did it take ?
aDhaai din.	Two and a half days.
4. ahile ke gardaihunuhunchha ?	What are you doing now ?
nepaali sikdai chhu.	I'm learning Nepali.
5. nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho ?	Have you found Nepali easy or difficult ?
sajilo laagyo.	I've found it easy.

(b)

1. e saahuji ! kukhuraako phul kasari ho ?	Oh shopkeeper ! How much is a chicken egg ?
euTaako tin sukaa.	Seventy five paisa each.

2. ali mahãgo bhayo. saaThi paisaamaa dinos, hunchha ? hudaina.	That's a bit expensive. Sell it for sixty paisa, o. k. ? No.
3. sattari paisaamaa dine ki nadine ? hunchha. linos. katiwaTaa diũ ?	Would you sell it for seventy paisa or not ? O.K. Take it. How many shall I give you ?
4. daswaTaa dinos. ek keji chini pani dinos. hawas. aru kehi chaahinchha ki?	Please give me ten. Also give me one k. g. of sugar. O. k. Do you need any thing else ?
5. chaahidaina. jammaa kati bhayo ? terha rupiyãã maatrai.	No, I don't. How mucn does it come to ? Only thirteen rupees.

PART II

(a)

1. hijo tapaaĩ kina iskul aaunu bhaena ? hijo bidaa thiyo.	Why didn't you come to school yesterday ? Yesterday was a holiday.
2. hijo ke garnubhayo ta ? hijo paaTantira ghumna gaẽ.	What did you do yesterday ? I went for a walk towards Patan.
3. paaTanmaa ke ke hernubhayo ? krishna mandir ra chiDiyaa khaanaa.	What did you see in Patan ? The temple of Lord Krishna and the zoo.
4. kati baje ghara pharkanubhayo? belukaa chha baje.	What time did you go back home? At six in the evening

(b)

1. hijo chaar baje gharmaa hunuhunthyo ? thiina.	Were you home at 4 o'clock yesterday ? No, I wasn't.
2. pããch baje ni ? pããch baje ta thiẽ.	How about at five o'clock ? I was home at five o'clock.
3. chaar baje kahãã hunuhunthyo? ma madanko gharmaa thiẽ.	Where were you at four o'clock ? I was at Madan's.
4. madanko aamaa baabu pani gharmaa thie ? thienan.	Were Madan's parents also at home ? No, they weren't.

(c)

1. DeDh mahinaa aghi tapaaĩ nepaalmaa hunuhunthyo ? thiina.	Were you in Nepal a month and a half ago ? No, I wasn't.
2. kahãã hunuhunthyo ta ? Tokiyomaa thiẽ.	Where were you then ? I was in Tokyo.
3. miki kahãã thiyo ni ? miki pani Tokiyomaa thiyo.	Where was Miki ? Miki also was in Tokyo.
4. Tokiyomaa jaaDo thiyo ki garmi thiyo ? ali ali jaaDo thiyo.	Was it cold or hot in Tokyo ? It was kind of cold.

(d)

1. tapaaĩlaai nepaali git gaauna aaũchha ? euTaa duiTaa gaauna sakchhu.	Do you know how to sing Nepali songs ? I can sing one or two songs.

2. kahãã siknubhayo ? Where did you learn them ?
yahĺ kaaThmaanDumaa. Here in Kathmandu.

3. tapaai reDiyo nepaal sunnu- Do you listen to Radio Nepal ?
hunchha.
kahile kahi sunchhu. Sometimes.

4. bi. bi. si. ni ? How about B.B.C. ?
bi. bi. si. ta dherai jaso sunchhu. I usually listen to B. B. C.

COMPREHENSION

maarkko ghar belaayat ho. u nepaal aaeho jhanDai tin mahinaa bhayo. belaayatmaa u euTaa kalejmaa bidyaarthi thiyo. usle dui mahinaa kaaThmaanDumaa nepaali sikyo. uslaai nepaali gaarho laagena. maark ahile euTaa iskulmaa angreji paDhaaudai chha. usko iskul nayaa ho. pohor saal usko iskulmaa dui sae keTaaharu thie. keTi euTaa pani thiena. ahile tis janaa keTi ra paune tin sae keTaaharu paDhchhan.

QUESTIONS–

1. maarkko ghar kahãã ho ?
2. u nepaal aaeko kati bhayo ?
3. belaayatmaa u ke thiyo ?
4. usle kati mahinaa nepaali sikyo ?
5. marh ahile ke gardaichha ?
6. uslaai nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho ?
7. pohor saal usko iskulmaa kati bidyarthi thie ?
8. heTi ni ?
9. ahile usko iskulmaa jammaa kati bidyaarthi paDhchhan ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation. Past Tense ot verb *'to be'* **'hunu'**

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	TRANSLATION
ma	thiẽ	thiina	I was/ wasn't
tã	thiis	thiinas	you were/weren't
u	thiyo	thiena	He was/wasn't
haami	thiyaũ	thiyenaũ	We were/weren't
timi	thiyau	thienau	You were/weren't
uniharu	thie	thienan	They were/weren't
tapaaĩ	hunuhunthyo	hunuhunnathyo	You were/weren't

Note the following patterns as well:

aaitabaar bidaa thiyo.	Sunday was a holiday.
aaja bihaana jaaDo thiena.	It wasn't cold this morning.
sanibaar ma biraami thiẽ.	I was ill on Saturday.
baaTo phohor thiyo.	The road was dirty.

2. **'laagnu'** is used here as an impresonal verb which requires **'laai'** on the subject.

malaai nepaali sajilo laagyo.	I found Nepali easy.
malaai nepaali gaarho laagena.	I didn't find Nepali difficult.

3. **'aaũnu'** iñ the following examples means *'to know how to* and functions impersonally as **'laagnu'** i. e. the verb endings do not change.

malaai nepaali git gaauna aaũchha.	I know how to sing Nepali songs.
malaai nepaali lekhna aauchha?	Do you hnow how to write Nepali?
uniharulaai bhaat pakaauna aaũdaina.	They do not know how to cook rice.
haamilaai ta aaũchha.	But we know how to.
uslaai moTar chalaauna aaũdaina	He does not hnow how to drive

4. Units of measurement—

paaisaa— The smallest unit of Nepali currency. There are 100 paisa in a rupee.

aanaa— Four paisa. However, in Terai, 4 anas =25 paisa, 8 anas =50 paisa and 16 anas = 1 rupee

mohar— 50 paisa.

5. liũ – This form is used to mean '*May I..... .. 'should I.....'or' 'can I... ...*

ma saathisaga jaaũ ?	May I go with my friend?
katiwaTaa phul lyaaũ ?	How many eggs should I bring ?
ma ek rupiyãã liũ ?	Can I take a rupee ?
jaaũ	Let's go.

Also study the following imperative sentences.

timi bholi aau.	Come tomorrow.
uniharu ek chhin basun.	Let them stay for a while.
u pani haamisanga aawos.	Let him come with us.
taas nakhela.	Don't play cards.

The imperative mood.

ma	jaau	May I go ?
tã	jaa, jaanũ	you go.
u	jaawos	I et him go.
haami	jaawaũ, jaaũ	I et us go.
timi	jaau, jaanu	you go.
uniharu	jaaun	Let them go.
tapaaI	jaanus, jaanuhos,	you go.

LESSON 21

VOCABULARY

aglo	tall	jasto	like
bahaal	rent	jattikai	like (that)
charpi	latrine	mausam	weather
chhiTo	fast, early	moTo	fat
dhaaro	water-tap	paani parnu	to rain
Dhilo	slow, late	pharak	different
dublo	thin, slim	pariwaar	family
ekai	same	sab bhandaa	the most(superla-
garmi	hot		tive)
hocho	short (in height)	sae	hundred

PART I

1. tapaaiko aaphno Deraa chha ki pariwaarmaa basnuhunchha ? mero aaphno Deraa chha.
   Do you have your own apartment or do you live with a family ? I have my own apartment.

2. bahaal kati chha ni ? paune dui sae.
   How much is the rent ? A hundred and seventy-five.

3. koThaa katiwaTaa chhan ? tinwaTaa. duiTaa sutne ko Thaa ra euTaa bhaansaa.
   How many rooms do you have ? Three. Two bedrooms and a kitchen.

4. charpi chha ki chhaina ? chha, tara raamro chhaina.
   Do you have a bathroom ? Yes, I do. But it's not a good one.

5. dhaaro ni ? dhaaro pani chha.
   How about a water tap ? There's a water tap too.

Part II

1. maachhaapuchhre kati aglo chha ?	How high is Machhapuchhre ?
maachhaapuchhre karib 23,000 phiT aglo chha.	Machhapuchhre is about 23,000 feet high.
2. dhaulaagiri ni ?	.....and Dhaulagiri ?
dhaulaagiri karib 27000 phiT aglo chha.	Dhaulagiri is about 27000 feet high.
3. kun pahaaD sabbhandaa aglo chha ?	Which is the highest mountain ?
sagarmaathaa sabbhandaa aglo chha.	Everest is the highest of them all.
4. sagarmaathaa kataa parchha ?	In which direction is Everest ?
sagarmaathaa purbamaa parchha.	Everest is located in the east.
5. dhaulaagiri ni ?	How about Dhaulagiri ?
dhaulaagiri paschimmaa parchha.	Dhaulagiri is in the west.
6. maachhaapuchhre kahããnira parchha ?	What is Machhapurchhre near ?
maachhaapuchhre pohharaanira parchha.	Machhapuchhre is near Pohhara.

(b)

1. maaik aaja bihaana kati baje uThyo ?	What time did Mike get up this morning ?
maaik chaar baje uThyo.	Mike got up at four o'clock.
2. PiTar ni ?	How about Peter ?
PiTar saaDhe pããch baje uThyo.	Peter got up at half-past five.
3. tapaaĩ kati baje uThnubhayo ni?	What time did you get up ?
ma chha baje uThẽ.	I got up at six o'clock.

4. maaik bhandaa piTar chhiTo uThyo ki Dhilo ?
piTar Dhilo uThyo.
Did Peter get up earlier or later than Mike ?
Peter got up later.

5. ko sabbhandaa Dhilo uThyo ?
ma sabbhandaa Dhilo uThẽ.
Who got up last ?
I got up last.

(c)

1. timro ghar taraaimaa ho ?
ho.
Are you from the Terai ?
Yes.

2. hijo aaja taraaimaa mausam kasto chha ?
kaaThmaanDumaa bhandaa dherai garmi chha.
What's the weather like in the Terai these days ?
It's hotter than in Kathmandu.

3. hiũdmaa kasto hunchha ni ?
hiũdmaa dherai garmi pani hudaina jaaDo pani hudaina.
How about in the winter ?
It's neither very hot nor very cold.

4. hijo aaja taraaimaa paani parchha ?
dhumdhaam parchha.
Does it rain in the Terai these days?
Yes, it rains a lot.

(d)

1. tapaaiko ghaDi mero jasto chha?
chhaina, pharak chha.
Is your watch like mine ?
No, it's different.

2. mol pani pharak chha ki ?
mol ta ekai holaa.
Is the price also different ?
I think the price is about the same.

3. tapaaiko saathiko ghaDi ni ?
usko haamro bhandaa mahãgo chha.
How about your friend's watch ?
His is more expensive than ours.

4. usko kati rupiyãã paryo ?
pããch sae rupiyaa paryo.
How much did his cost ?
It was five hundred rupees.

1. yo koThaamaa sabbhandaa moTo ko chha ?	Who's the fattest in this room ?
Tam chha.	Tom is.
2. sabbhandaa dublo ko chha ni ?	And who is the thinnest ?
sabbhandaa dublo jim chha.	Jim is the thinnest.
3. piTar dublo chha ki moTo chha?	Is Peter fat or thin ?
u Tam bhandaa dublo chha, tara jim bhandaa moTo chha.	He is thinner than Tom, but fatter than Jim.
4. tapaaini ?	How about you ?
ma PiTar jattikai chhu.	I'm like peter.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'bhandaa'** is used with comparative degree of adjectives and is translated as *'than*

raam bhandaa shyaam aglo chha.	Shyam is taller than Ram.
nepaal bhandaa amerikaa Thulo chha.	America is bigger than Nepal.

Note the word order of comparisons in Nepali:

i. e. **'raam bhaanda'**..... .'while in English the reverse is said,

i. e.....*than Ram*

To avoid confusion, look for the word after *'than'* in English and say that first followed by **'bhandaa'**

In instances of comparison where *'than'* is not used in English, Nepali remains the same as in the basic question form of descriptions.

ko thulo chha ?	Who is big ?
ko Thulo chha ?	Who is bigger ?

2. The word 'jhan' is also used in making comparisons.

usko ghar raamro chha.	His house is beautiful.
usko bhaaiko ghar jhan raamro chha.	His brother's house is all the more beautiful.

'sabbhandaa' is the superlative degree of adjectives.

yo kitaab sabbhandaa raamro chha.	This is the best book.
yo pasal sabbhandaa mahãgo chha.	This is the most expensive store.

Note that sometimes the superlative degree is also formed by doubling the adjectives.

a) miThaa miThha khaane kuraa lyaau.	Bring me the most delicious food.
b) usle mahãgaa mahãgaa ghaDi kinyo.	He bought the most expensive watches.

LESSON 22

VOCABULARY

banaaunu	to make	khaali	empty, vacant
chalaaunu	to drive	kinmel garnu	to shop
disaa garnu	to defecate	nuhaaunu	to bathe
dhunu	to wash	paDhaaunu	to teach
ek chhin	a moment	pharkaaunu	to return
	a while	pisaab garnu	to urinate
kahile kahi	sometimes	saalaa-khaalaa	on the average
kamaaunu	to earn.		
	to make money		

PART I

1. yo Tyaaksi khaali ho ?	Is this Taxi empty ?
khaali ho, tapaai kahãã jaane ?	Yes, it is. Where would you like to go ?
2. paaTansamma kati linu hunchha ?	To Patan. How much would you charge ?
miTar chha ni.	It has a meter in it.
3. tapaaile yo Tyaaksi chalaaeko kati bhayo ?	How long have you been driving this Taxi ?
jhanDai chaar barsha bhayo.	For almost four years.
4. ek dinmaa kati kamaaunu hunchha ?	How much do you earn (get) a day ?
saalaa-khaalaa pachaas rupiyãã.	Fifty rupees on the average

Part II

(a)

1. tapaaI bihaana kati baje uThnuhunchha ? saat baje uThchhu.	What time do you get up in the morning ? I get up at seven o'clock.
2. uThera ke garnuhunchha ? disaa pisaab garchhu ani nuhaauchhu.	What do you do after getting up ? I go to the bath room and take a shower.
3. ani ke garnuhunchha ? chiyaa khaanchhu.	What do you do then ? I have tea.
4. chiyaa aaphai banaaunu hunchha ? hoina, kaam garne maachhe chha.	Do you make tea yourself ? No, I've a worker.
5. uslaai mahinaako kati dinu parchha ? DeDh saya.	How much do you have to pay him per month ? One hundred and fifty rupees.
6. aru ke kaam garchha ra ? lugaa dhunchha ani koThaa saphaa garchha.	What else does he do ? He washes clothes and cleans the room.

(b)

1. aaja bihaana tapaaI kati baje uThnubhayo ? paune saat baje.	What time did you get up this morning ? At quarter to seven.
2. uThera ke garnubhayo ? uThera chiyaa khaaẽ.	What did you do after getting up? After getting up, I had tea.
3. chiyaa khaaepachhi ke garnubhayo ? chiyaa khaepachhi nepaali paDhẽ.	What did you do after having tea ? After having tea, I studied Nepali.

4. tyaspachhi ke garnubhayo?	Then what did you do ?
bajaar gaẽ.	I went to the bazaar.
5. kina ?	Why ?
kinmel garna.	To do shopping.

(c)

1. timiharu gaaũmaa kahile jaanchhau ?	When are you going to go the village ?
dui mahinaa pachhi jaanchhaũ.	We're going after two months.
2. gaaũmaa gaera ke garchhau ?	What are you going to do in the village ?
iskulmaa paDhaauchhaũ.	We're going to teach at the school
3. gaaũmaa kati baschhau ?	How long are you going to stay in the village ?
dui barsha baschhaũ.	We'll stay for two years.
4. gaaũmaa dui barsha base-pachhi ke garchhau ?	After you stay there for two years, what are you going to do ?
ghar pharkanchhaũ.	We'll go back home.

(d)

1. timi aaja diũso ke garchhau ?	What are you going to do this afternoon ?
ma ek chhin nepaali paDhchhu.	I'm going to study Nepali for a while.
2. nepaali paDhepachhi ke garchhau ?	What are you going to do after that ?
nepaali paDhepachhi chiTThi lekhchhu.	I'm going to write a letter after studying Nepali.
3. kaslaai chiThi lekchhau ?	Who are you going to write to ?
mero saathilaai.	To my friend.

4. timro saathile timilaai chiTThi lekchha ki lekhdaina ni ? — Does your friend write to you ?
   hahile kahĩ lekhchha. — He writes sometimes.

COMPREHENSION

hijo maaik khaanaa saanaa khaaera bajaarmaa gayo. usle bajaarbaaTa rããgoko maasu, raksi ra aru chijbij kinera lyaayo. belukaa usko Deraamaa uskaa saathiharu aae. uniharule maasu ra raksi khaae. sabailaai rããgoko maasu man paryo. khaae pachhi uniharule ek chhin gaph gare. raati das baje maaikkããbaaTa saathiharu aaphno Deraamaa gae. uniharu gaepachhi maaik sutyo.

QUESTIONS–

1. maaik khaanaa khaaera kakaa gayo ?
2. usle bajaarbaaTa ke ke kinera lyaayo ?
3. belukaa usko Deraamaa ko ko aae ?
4. uniharule ke ke khaae ?
5. uniharulaai rããgoko maasu man paryo ki man parena ?
6. khaaepachhi uniharule ke gare ?
7. maaikkããbaaTa saathiharu kati baje gae ?
8. kahãã ?
9. uniharu geapachhi maaikle ke garyo ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

ma khaanchhu ra iskul jaanchhu. — I eat and go to school.
ma khaanchhu tyaspachhi iskul jaanchhu. — I eat and then go to school

The above two sentences are grammatically correct and are used to some extent but the **'era** and **'epachhi'** forms are usually more frequent.

The above two sentences can also be written using **'era'** and **'epachhi'.**

ma khaaera iskul jaanchhu.
ma khaaepachi iskul jaanchhu.

In general **'unu'** and **'nu'** of the verb roots are omitted and **'era'** or **epachhi** are added to the end.

khaanu	khaa era	khaa epachhi
pakaa/unu	pakaa era	pakaa epachhi
li/nu	li era	li epachhi
sut/nu	sut era	sut epachhi

Note, however, that following verbs are irregular as they are in their past tense forms:

jaanu	gaera	gaepachhi
lagnu	lagera	lagepachhi
runu	roera	roepachhi
dhunu	dhoera	dhoepachhi

The difference between **'era'** and **'epachi'. 'era'** emphasizes **action** whereas **'epachi** emphasize time.

Study the following examples:

ma juttaa phukaalera mandir bhitra jaanchhu.	I take off my shoes before I go into a temple.
ghar pugera haat mukh dhoẽ.	After I arrived home, I washed my hands and face.
haami bhaat khaaepachhi chiyaa khaadainau	We don't drink tea after meals.
sinemaa herepachhi paaTan gayaũ.	We went to Patan after we watched the movies.

Though **'era. and 'epachhi'** are frequently interchangable, the distinction should be kept in mind.

u aaepachhi malaai bheTna bhannos.	Please tell him to see me when he comes.

The **'era.** form is not correct in the above sentence

bajaarmaa gaera lyaannos.	Please go and get it from the market.

'epachhi' form is not correct here.

In addition to 'epachhi. there is the 'i, form which is also heard.

ma gharmaa gai, lugga pheri aaẽ.	I went home, changed clothes and then came.
bhaat khaai, lugaa dhoi, aaraam gari ani aaeko.	I had my meal, washed my clothes, rested and then came.

LESSON 23

VOCABULARY

ausadhi	medicine	daakTarlaai	to consult with the
bheTnu	to meet	dekhaaunu	doctor
chinnu	to know, to recognize	kaam	job, work
		ek paTak	once
DaakTar	doctor	pauDi khelnu	to swim
dekhaaunu	to show	sarkaari	official (Govt.)
		Thegaan	certain

PART I

(a)

1. hijo kina aaunu bhaena ? — Why didn't you come yesterday
   kaam thiyo. — I was busy.
2. ke kaam thiyo ? — What work did you have ?
   ek janaa saathi bheTnu parne thiyo. — I had to meet a friend of mine
3. bheT bhayo ta ? — Did you meet him ?
   bhaena. — No, I did't.
4. kina ? — Why ?
   u gharmaa thiena. — He was not at home.

(b)

1. uhããlaai chinnuhunchha? — Have you met him ?
   chindina. — No, I haven't.
2. wahãã si.Di.o. hunuhunchha. — He is the C.D.O.
   e, namaskaar. — Oh, I see. Hello.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩ yurop jaanubhaeko chha ?	Have you been to Europe ?
gaeko chhu.	Yes, I have.
2. kun kun deshmaa jaanu bhaeko chha ?	Which countries have you been to ?
belaayat, frans ra jarmanimaa geako chhu.	I've been to Britain, France, and Germany.
3. narwemaa ni ?	How about Norway ?
narwemaa ta gaeko chhaina.	I have'nt been to Norway.
4. swiDenmaa jaanu bhaeko chha ta ?	Have you been to Sweden ?
swiDenmaa pani gaeko chhaina.	No, I haven't been to Sweden either.

(b)

1. tapaaĩko saathi kahãã chha ?	Where is your friend ?
sinemaa herna gaeko chha.	He has gone to the movies.
2. usãga ko ko gaekaa chhan ?	Who has gone with him ?
usãga jim ra Tam gaekaa chhan.	Jim and Tom have gone with him.
3. bil gaeko chhaina ?	Hasn't Bill gone ?
ahã, gaeko chhaina.	No, he hasn't.

4. u kahãã gaeko chha ta ?	Where has he gone ?
ghumna gaeko chha.	He's gone for a walk.

1. bhaansaa garnubhayo ?	Did you eat ?
ahã, khaaeko chhaina.	No, I haven't.
2. kina ta ? eghaara baji sakyo.	Why ? It's already eleven o'clock.
peT dukheko chha.	I've some stomach trouble.
3. dishaa pani laageko chha ?	Do you have diarrhoea too ?
laageko chha.	Yes, I have.
4. ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ?	Did you take any medicine ?
khaaeko chhaina.	No, I haven't

(d)

1. timile Tamko Deraa dekhekaa chhau ?	Do you know where Tom lives ?
dekheko chhu.	Yes, I do.
2. ek paTak usko Deraamaa jaauna. mero kaam chha.	Let's go to his apartment once I've some business with him.
aaja bholi yahãã chhaina.	He's not here these days.
pokharaa gaeko chha.	He's gone to Pokhara.
3. kahile aaũchha ta ?	When will be he back ?
Thegaan chhaina.	It's not certain.
4. sarkaari kaammaa gaeko ho ki kyaa ho ?	Has he gone there on official business ?
hoina, bidaamaa.	No, he's on vacation.

COMPREHENSION—

das baji sakyo tara raam ahilesamma uTheko chhaina. aaja shanibaar ho tyaskaaran uslaai iskul jaanu pardaina. usko bhaai

gopaal bihaana saberai uThera saathiharusaga pauDi khelna baalaaju gayo. ek ghanTaa pauDi khelera gopaal ghara pharkyo. gharmaa aaera usle aaphno aamaasaga sodhyo, "daai ta koThaamaa hunuhunna, kahãã jaanu bhayo ?" usko aamaale bhaannubhayo, "uslaai rughaa laageko chha, tyaskaaran DaakTarlaai dekhaauna gaeko chha "

QUESTIONS—

1. raam uThyo ?
2. aaja uslaai kina iskul jaanu pardaina ?
3. usko bhaai uThera kahaa gayo ?
4. kina ?
5. ko sãga ?
6. u kati ghanTaa pauDi khelera ghara pharkyo ?
7. gharmaa aaera usle aamaasãga ke sodhyo ?
8. aamaale ke bhannubhayo ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

I Conjugation of PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

a) With INTRANSITIVE VERB (Those which don't take objects)

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko chhu	gaeko chhaina
tã	gaeko chhas	gaeko chhainas
u	gaeko chha	gaeko chhaina
haami	gaekaa chhaũ	gaekaa chhainaũ
timi	gaekaa chhau	gaekaa chhainau
uniharu	gaekaa chhan	gaekaa chhainan
tapaaĩ	gaanu bhaeko chha	jaanu bhaeko chhaina

b) With TRANSITIVE VERB (those which take objects)

maile	khaaeko chhu	khaaeho chhaina
taĩle	khaaeko chhas	khaaeko chhainas
usle	khaaeko chha	khaaeko chhaina
haamile	khaaekaa chhaũ	khaaekaa chaaianaũ
timile	khaaekaa chhau	khaaekaa chhainau
uniharule	khaaehaa chhan	khaaekaa chhainan
tapaaĩle	khaanu bhaeho chha	khaanu bhaeko chhaina

2. USAGES OF PRESENT PERFECT TENSE—

a) To describe Past activities without any time reference

ma pokharaa gaeko chhu.	I've been to Pokhara.
maile french khaanaa khaaeko chhu.	I've eaten French food.
maile sekspiyarko kitaab paDheko chhu.	I've read Shakspeare.
usle malaai maddat gareko chha.	He's helped me.

b) To describe the activities that are related up until the present tense.

maile kahile pani raksi khaaeko chhaina.	I've never drunk raksi.
kamalaa aaeko chhaina.	Kamala hasn't come.
maile jimlaai bheTeho chhaina.	I've not met Jim.
maile ajhasamma kaam sakeko chhaina.	I haven't finsihed my work yet.

c) Frequently to describe an activity which has some present relevance.

baa jillaa panchhaayatamaa jaanubhaeko chha.	Father has gone to the District Panchayat office.

mero daai aaunu bhaeko chha.	My elder brother has come.
ma aaja raatbhari suteko chhaina.	I haven't slept all night.
malaai sancho chhaina.	I'm not feeling well.
usle raksi khaaeko chha.	He has drunk raksi (He is drunk).

d) There are also a few verbs in Nepali using this form when the actual tense coincides with the English Present Progressive.

tyo keTile raato lugaa lagaaeko chha.	That girl is wearing a red dress.
ghaam laageko chha.	The sun is shining.
paani pareko cha.	It's raining.

e) Note also the following:

maile uslaai chineko chhu.	I know him.
ma uslaai chinchhu.	I know him.
maile kehi gareko chhaina.	I haven't done anything.
maile uslaai kehi gareko chhaina.	I haven't done anything to him.

3. Si. Di. O/ Chief District Officer

LESSON 24

VOCABULARY

chaDhnu	to climb	khub	very
chhuTTi	vacation, holiday	majaa	fun
Dar laagnu	to be afriad	nikaai	very (emphatic)
ghumnu	to wander, to ramble	pohor (saal)	last year
		prasiddha	famous
haraaunu	to lose	samudra	sea
jukaa	leech, worm	sangrahaalaya	museum
kinaar	beach, bank	sundar	beautiful

(a)

1. yo reDiyo tapaaile kahãã kinnubhayo ?	Where did you buy this radio ?
hangkangmaa.	In Hongkong.
2. kahile kinnubhayo ?	When did you buy it ?
amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa aaũdaakheri.	I bought it while I was coming to Nepal from the States.
3. amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa aaũdaakheri byaangkak maa pani basnubhayo ?	Did you stay in Bangkok also on your way to Nepal ?
basẽ.	Yes, I did.
4. byaangkak kasto rahechha ta ?	How did you find Bangkok ?
raamro rahechha.	It's nice.

(b)

1. pohor saal tapaaĩ jomsom jaanubhayo, hoina ?	You went to Jomsom last year. didn't you ?
gaẽ.	Yes, I did.

2. kasari jaanubhayo ?
jããdaa hawaai jahaajmaa ani aaũdaa hiDera.

How did you go ?
I went by plane and on the way back I walked.

3. baaTo kasto rahechha ?
baaTo ta raamro rahechha tara paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo rahechha.

How did you like the trail ?
The trail is nice but when it rains there are a lot of leeches.

4. jaana aauna jammaa kati din laagyo ?
dash din.

How many days did you spend alltogether ?
Ten days.

(c)

1. timi perismaa gaekaa chhau ?
gaeko chhu.

Have you been to Paris ?
Yes, I have.

2. tyahãã kati din basyau ?
dash-baarha din basẽ.

How long did you stay there ?
I stayed there for ten or twelve days.

3. tyahãã basdaakheri ke ke garyau ?
sangrahaalayaharu herẽ, aaiphel Taawar maathi chaDhẽ ra sahar ghume.

What did you do while you were there ?
I went to many museums, climbed up to the Eiffel Tower and wandered around the city.

4. aaiphel Taawarmaathi chaDhdaakheri Dar laagena ?
laagena.

Weren't you scared while climbing up the Eiffel Tower ?
No, I wasn't.

(d)

1. yespaali dasaiko chuTTi hũdda timi kahãã gayau ?
ma sri lankaamaa gaẽ.

Where did you go for the Dasain vacation this year ?
I went to Sri Lanka.

2. sri lankaa kasto rahechha ?
nikkai ramaailo rahechha.

How did you like Sri Lanka ?
I found it very pleasant.

3. sri lankaa keko laagi prasiddha rahechha ?	What is Sri Lanka famous for ?
samudrako sundar kinaar haruko laagi.	For its beautiful beaches.
4. tyahãã basdaakheri tapaaile pauDi khelnubhayo ?	Did you go swimming while you were there ?
ho khelẽ. khub majaa bhayo.	Yes, I did. It was great !

(e)

1. aaja mero jholaa haraayo.	I lost my bag to-day.
kahãã haraaunu bhayo ?	Where did you lose it ?
2. bajaarbaaTa churoT kinera pharkãdaa haraayo.	I lost it while I was coming back from the bazaar after I bought some cigarettes.
paisaa pani thiyo ?	Did you have any money in it !
3. tin sae rupiyãã jati thiyo.	Yes, there was about three hundred rupees.
aru ke ke thiyo ni ?	What else was there ?
4. euTaa khukuri ra duiTaa kitaab.	A khukuri and two books.
yo sunera dherai dukha laagyo.	I'm really sorry to hear that.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. '.....**daa.** as in '**jããdaa.** '**pugdaa**' is one of the imperfect participles imply ng '*while or when doing something* ! In spoken Nepali, the word '.. ..**kheri.** is also used frequently giving the same meaning.

Study the fol'owing examples.

a) sinemaa herdaakheri mero ããkhaa dukhyo	While I was watching the movie, my eyes hurt.
b) kaam gardaakheri thakaai laagyo.	I got tired while I was working.

c) bhakunDo kheldaakeheri usko khuTTaa bhäächchiyo.	He broke his legs when he was playing foot-baal.
d) baaTomaa hiDdaa maile uslaai bheTe.	I met him when I was walking along the road.

Note that this form indicates a concurrent action sequence. i. e. one action occuring while another action is going on.

1. The negative of this '*while when doing,* form can be used and interpreted like the following–

a) paisaa nahudaa usle ghaDi kinena.	He didn't buy the watch because he didn't have money.
b) bhaneko namaandaa usle dukha paayo.	He suffered because he didn't listen (to us).
c) ausadhi nakhaadaa rogi maryo.	The patient died because he didn't take the medicine.

Compare the last sentence with the following.

ausadhi nakhaadai rogi maryo.	The patient died before he took the medicine.

Note: The form of this participle (as other imperfect participles) remains the same whatever the person, number or gender of the subject.

3. 'rahechha'– generally implies that the fact stated in the sentence has been recently discovered by the speaker.

kaThmanDu phohor rahechha.	I found Kathmandu dirty.

The fact that 'Kathmandu is dirty has just become known to the speaker. The negative form is 'rahenachha'

paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo rahechha.	There are a lot of leeches when it rains (I have just found out that.....)

nepaali sikna gaarho rehenachha.	I found out that it's not difficult to learn Nepali.
minaale Tibeti boldo rahena chha.	Meena does not speak Tibetan (I just found out that.....)
bhairahawaa ramaailo rahenachha.	Bhairahawa isn't pleasant (I just discovered that.....)

LESSON 25

VOCABULARY

bhoj	feast	maannu	to follow
bokaa	he goat	pahilo	first
chaaD	festival	pandhraũ	fifteenth
chharlangai	clearly	pujaa	worship
dekhinu	to be seen	suninu	to be heard
dashaĩ	Durga puja Festival	Tikaa	red mark worn on the forehead
dharma	religion		
durgaa	the godess who killed the buffalo demon	Thulaa	superiors
		usobhae	if so, in that case
kaaTnu	to cut		
kinabhane	because		
maanchhe	man		

PART I

1. kati bajyo ?	What time is it ?
baara bajna laagyo.	It's almost twelve.
2. aaja kahãã khaana jaane bichaar chha ?	Where were you thinking of eating to day ?
'uniTi' maa jaawaũ na.	Let's go to the Unity.
3. 'uniTi' kahãã nirã parchha ?	Where is the Unity ?
niu roDmaa ta ho ni.	It's on New Road.
4. khaanaa kasto paainchha ni ?	What kind of food can you get there ?
miTho paainchha. paani pani umaaleko dinchha.	Good food and they also serve boiled water.
5. usobhae tyahĩ jaawaũ.	Let's go there, then.
jaawaũ.	Let's go.

PART II

1. nepaalmaa b.b.c. reDio suninchha ?	Can you get the BBC in Nepal ? (lit. Is the BBC heard in Nepal ?)
suninchha. belaayatmaa reDiyo nepaal sunicnchha ?	Yes, you can. Can you get Radio Nepal in England ?
2. sunidaina. tapaaī b.b.c. sunnuhunchha ?	No you can't. Do you listen to the B.B.C. ?
kahile kahī sunchhu.	Yes, I do sometimes.
3. dheraijaso ke sunnuhunchha?	What do you listen to most of the time ?
dheraijaso reDiyo nepaal nai sunchhu.	I listen to Radio Nepal most of the time.
4. masko reDiyo ni ?	How about Radio Moscow ?
masko reDiyo kahilepani sundina.	No, I never listen to that.
5. kina ?	Why ?
kinabhane ma rusi bhaashaa bujhdina.	Because I don't understand Russian

(b)

1. timro DeraabaaTa himaal raamrosanga dekhinchha ?	Can you see the Himalayas well from your apartment ?
ahã, raamrosanga dekhidaina.	No I can't see them well.
timro gharbaaTa ni ?	How about from your house ?
2. mero ghar baaTa ta chharlangai dekhinchha.	I can see them very clearly from my house.
kun kun himaal dekhinchhan ?	Which peaks can you see ?
3. ganesh ra laamTaang dekhinchhan.	Ganesh and Lamtang.
sagarmaathaa ni ?	How about Everest ?
4. sagarmaathaa ta dekhidaina.	No, I can't see Everest.

1. nepaalmaa kun kun dharma maaninchaa ?
   What religions are followed in Nepal ?
   hindu ra buddha dharma maaninchha.
   Hinduism and Buddhism.

2. aru dharma maanidaina ?
   Aren't there any other religions followed ?
   maaninchha, tara dherai thorai maatra.
   Yes, but not much.

3. sabbhandaa dherai kun chaanI maaninchha ?
   Which one is followed the most ?
   hindu dharma sab bhandaa dherai maaninchha.
   Hinduism is followed the most.

4. tapaaI kun dharma maannu hunchha ni ?
   What's your religion ?
   ma hindu dharma maanchhu.
   I'm a Hindu.

COMPREHENSION—

dashaI hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chaaD ho. yo chaaaD aKTobar mahinaamaa prachha. yeslaai pandara dinsamma manaainchha. pahilo dindekhi pandharaũ dinsamma nai durgaako pujaa garinchha ra dherai bokaa kaaTinchhan. Tikaa dashaIko sabbhandaa Thulo din ho. yes dinmaa aphubhandaa Thulaa maanchhe baaTa Tikaa lagaainchha. yes chaaD bhari nai hinduharu bhoj khaanchhan.

QUESTIONS:—

1. hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chhaD kun ho ?
2. yo kun mahinnamaa parchha ?
3. yo chaaD kati din samma manaainchha ?
4. yes belaamaa kun debiko pujaa garinchha ?

5. kati dinsamma ?
6. yes belaamaa ke kaaTinchha ?
7. dashaiko sabbhandaa Thulo din kun ho ?
8. yes dinmaa ke lagaainchha ?
87. kasbaaTa ?
10. yo chhaD bhari hinduharu ke garchhan ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'bajna laagnu.-** Its a compound verb formed from two roots **'bajnu.** and **'laagnu.**

baarha bajna laagyo.	It's almost 12 o'clock.
u jaana laagyo.	He is about to go.
jahaaj uDna laagyo.	The plane is about to take-off.
garmi huna laagyo.	The hot season is coming.

2. 'parchha' is used here to specify the time of an event.

yo chaD akTobar mahinaamaa parchha.	This festival falls in the month of October.

Study the following examples:

a) yo kitaabko dash rupiyãã parchha.	This book costs ten rupees.
b) ilaam purbamaa parchha.	Ilam lies in the east.
c) yahãã dherai paani parchha.	It rains a lot here.
d) rughaa laagdaa aaspirin kaaanu parchha.	You should take aspirin when you have cold.

3. pahilo, pandhraũ are ordinal numbers.

study the following—

pahilo	first	teshro	third
doshro	second	chautho	fourth

paachaũ	fifth	nawaũ	ninth
chhaiTaũ	sixth	dasaũ	tenth
saataũ	seventh	eghaaraũ	eleventh
aaThaũ	eighth	baaraũ	twelfth

4. (a) **'suninchha., 'dekhinchha.** are impersonal forms of the personal verb **'sunnu. 'dekhnu'. These** verb forms can best be translated by an English passive.

yahããbaaTa pokaraa dekhinchhha.	Pokara is seen from here.
dinko aaTh ghanTaa kaam garinchha.	Eight hours of work is done every day.

b) Some transitive verbs and their impersonal forms—

sunnu–	to hear	suninchha–	is heard.
maannu	to celebrate	maaninchha–	is celebrated.
garnu–	to do	garinchha	is done.
paDhaaunu–	to teach	paDhaainchha–	is taught
dekhaaunu–	to show	dekhaainchha–	is shown
dinu–	to give	diinchha	is given

Note suffix **'i'** is added in all the impersonal forms in the above examples.

LESSON 126

VOCABULARY

bigyaan	science	parsi	day after tommorrow
gaai	cow	phursad	free time
khasi	castrated male goat	siddhinu	to be finished
krishi	agriculture		

PART I

1. bhannos.	Yes, please.
malaai TikaT chaahiyo.	I need a ticket.
2 kahaãã̃ko laagi ?	Where for ?
pokharaako.	For Pokhara.
2. kahileko lagi ni ?	For when ?
bholiko laagi.	For tomorrow.
4. bholiko TikaT ta siddhiyo.	All tickets for tomorrow have been sold (lit. are finished)
usobhae parsikolaagi dions.	In that case, give me one for the day after tomorrow.
5. ek chhin parkhanos, hai.	Please wait a minute, okay ?
hawas.	Okay.

PART II

(a)

1. amerikaa hũdaa tapaai ke	When you were in the States
garnuhunthyo ?	What did you use to do ?
kalejmaa paDhthe.	I uded to go to college.
2. ke paDhnuhunthyo ?	What did you (used to) study ?
bigyaan paDhthẽ.	I studied science.

3. nepaali pani paDhnuhunthyo ki ?	Did you use to study Nepali also ?
paDhdinathẽ.	No, I didn't.
4. kalejmaa paDhdaa sinemaa pani hernuhunthyo ?	Did you use to go to movies while you were in college ?
hahile kahĩ herthẽ.	I used to go sometimes.

(b)

1. amerikaamaa tapaaĩ keko maasu khaanuhunthyo ?	What kind of meat did you use to eat in the States ?
gaaiko maasu khaanthẽ.	I used to eat beef.
2. khasiko maasu pani khaanu hunthyo' ?	Did you (use to) eat goat meat also ?
khaannathẽ.	No, I didn't.
3. kina ni ?	Why not ?
amerikaamaa khasiko maasu paaĩdaina.	Goat meat isn't available in the States.
4. wahãã amerikaamaa keko maasu khaanuhunthyo ?	What meat did he use to eat in the States ?
gaaiko maasu khaanuhunthyo.	He used to eat beef.

(c)

1. dui mahinaa aghi timi kahãã thiyau ?	Where were you two months ago ?
ma jaapaanmaa thiẽ.	I was in Japan.
2. jaapaanmaa ke garthyau ?	What did you (use to) do in Japan ?
ma paDhthẽ.	I used to study.

3. ke paDhtheu ?	What did you (use to) study ?
krishi paDhthẽ.	I used to study agriculture.
4. u ke paDhthyo ?	What did he (use to) study ?
u krishi paDhthyo.	He used to study agriculture.

COMPREHENSION—

jimko ghar amerikaako kyaaliphorniyaa raajyamaa parchha. u nepaal aaeko dui mahinaa pani bhaeko chhaina tara u raamrai nepaali bolchha. amerikaamaa hũdaa u kalejmaa paDhthyo. amerikaamaa u khasiko maasu khaadainathyo kinabhane tyahãã khasiko maasu paaidaina. kalejmaa paDhdaa jim kahile kããhi bhali bal ra ping pang khelthyo tara phuTbal kheldainathyo kinabhane uslaai phuTbal khelna man pardaina. yahãã aaepachhi usle kunaipani khel kheleko chhaina. uslaai khelne phursad pani hudaina. uslaai dinko chaar ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchaa ani aru pani kaam garnu parchha.

QUESTIONS—

1. jimko ghar kun raajyamaa parchha ?
2. u nepaal aaeko dui mahinaà bhayo ?
3. u nepaali kasto bolchha ?
4. amerikaamaa u ke garthyo ?
5. u khasiko maasu khaanthyo ?
6. kina ?
7. u kun kun khel khelthyo ?
8. phuTbal ni ?
9. yahãã aaepachhi usle kun khel kheleko chha ?
10. kina ?
11. uslaai dinko kati ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchha ?
12. uslaai aru pani kaam garnu parchha ?

1. **'bhanos'** literally *'say'* is sometimes used to ask people what they want. It can be roughly translated as *'what do you want ?'* or *May I help you ?*

2. Coujugation of PAST HABITUAL- **khaanu-** *to eat*

PRONOUNS	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE	ALTERNATIVE NEG
ma	khaanthẽ	khaannathẽ	khaadinathẽ
tã	khaanthis	khaannathis	khaadinathis
u	khaanthyo	khaannathyo	khaadainathyo
haami	khaanthyaũ	khaannathyaũ	khaadainathyaũ
timi	khaantheu	khaannatheu	khaadainatheu
uniharu	khaanthe	khaannathe	khaadainathe.
tapaaĩ	khaanuhunthyo	khaanuhunnathyo	khaanuhudainathyo

3. The 'thẽ' form is used to express a repetitive or habitual activity in the past It's usally used with the adverbs denoting frequency such as **'always' 'usually'** in the morning's etc. and with the **"daakheri"** form

ma briTenmaa basdaa sadhai sup khanthẽ.	I always used to have soup when I was in Britain.
aaitabaar charchmaa jaanthẽ.	I used to go to church on Sundays.
beluki beluki ghumna jaanthẽ.	I used to go for a walk in the evenings.

4. **'ai'** as in **'ramrai'** added to the adjective diminishes the quality of the adjective. so **'raamrai.** converts **'raamro'** into meaning *'fairly good'*

Thik	—	Thikai
sancho	—	sanchai
Thulo	—	Thulai

LESSON 27

VOCABULARY

baDhi	more	lugaa	cloth, clothes, dress
baliyo	strong	maddhye	among, between
bataaunu	to tell, narrate	nyaano	warm
bidyaarthi	student	pugnu	to arrive, to suffice
bishaya	subject	roknu	to stop
itihaas	history	Thik	right, exact
jor	pair	Thaaũ	place

PART I

1 e daai ! pokharaa jaane basko TikaT kahãã paainchha ?	Hello ! (lit. Hey, brother) where can I get a ticket for the bus to Pokhara ?
yahĩ paainchha.	You can get them here.
2. malaai bholiko laagi duiTaa TikaT dinos ta.	Please give me two tickets for tomorrow.
kati bajeko basmaa jaane tapaai?	Which bus do you want to take ?
3. pahilo bas kati baje jaancha ?	What time does the first bus leave ?
Thik saat baje.	At seven o'clock sharp.
4. pokharaa kati baje pugchha ni ?	What time does it arrive in Pokhara ?
tin bajetira.	Around three o'clock.
5. baaTomaa rokchha ki rokdaina?	Does it stop on the way or not ?
ek dui Thaaũmaa rokchha.	It stops at one or two places.

PART II

(a)

1. kaapimaa tapaaĩko naam leknons. tapaaĩle kasko naam lekhnu bhayo ?	Please write your name in your notebook. Whose name did you write ?
maile mero naam lekhẽ.	I wrote my name.
2. aba mero naam lehhnos.	Now write my name.
tapaaĩle kasko naam lekhnu bhayo ?	Whose name did you write ?
maile tapaaĩko naam lekhẽ.	I wrote your name.
3. mero naam lekhnubhandaa pahile tapaaĩle kasko naam lekhnubhayo ?	Whose name did you write before writing my name ?
tapaaĩko naam lekhnubhandaa pahile maile mero naam lekhẽ.	I wrote my name before writing your name.
4. mero naam lekhnubhandaa pahile wahããle kasko naam lekhnubhayo ?	Whose name did he write before writing my name ?
tapaaĩko naam lekhnu bhandaa pahile wahããle aaphno naam lekhnubhayo	He wrote his name before writing yours.

(b)

1. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile timi kahaa thiyau ?	Where were you before coming to Nepal ?
amerikaamaa thiẽ.	I was in the States.
2. amerikaamaa ke gartheu ?	What did you use to do in the States ?
paDhthẽ.	I used to study.
3. kun bishaya paDhtheu ?	What subject did you (use to) study ?
dharma ra itihaas.	Religion and history.

4. dharma ra itihaas maddhye timilaai kun bishaya baDhi man parchha ?
   Of the two subjects, which do you like better ?

   malaai dharma baDhi man parchha.
   I like religion better.

COMPREHENSION—

nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile ma iskaTlyaanDmaa thiẽ. tyahãã ma euTaa kalejmaa paDhthẽ. ek din maile euTaa nepaali bidyarthilaai bheTẽ. usle malaai nepaalko baaremaa bataayo. usko kuraa sunera malaai nepaalmaa aauna man laagyo. iskaTlyaanDmaa pani pahaaDharu chhan. tara nepaalkaa jati aglaa chaainan. iskaTlyaanDmaa hũdaa pani ma bidaamaa pahaaD chaDhthẽ. nepaalbaaTa pharkanu bhandaa pahile euTaa pahaaD chaDhne bichaar chha. pahaaD chaDhnako laagi baliyo juttaa ra nyaano lugaa chaahinchha. tyasaile maile ek jor baliyo buT ra nyaano lugaa lyaaeko chhu. iskaTlyaanDmaa dherai jaso hiũ parchha. hiũ pardaa ma sadhai mero buT lagaauthẽ. kaaThmaanDumaa bhane ma aaepachhi ek paTak pani hiũ pareko chhaina.

QUESTIONS—

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile tapaaĩ kahãã hunuhunthyo ?
2. tyahãã tapaaĩ ke garnu hunthyo ?
3. ek din tapaaĩle kaslaai bheTnubhayo ?
4. usle tapaaĩlaaĩ keko baaremaa bataayo ?
5. usko kuraa sunera tapaaĩlaai ke garna man laagyo ?
6. iskaTlyaanDmaa pahaaDharu chhan ki chhainan ?
7. ti pahaaDharu nepaalkaa jati aglaa chhan ?
8. iskaTlyaanDmaa hũdaa pani tapaaĩ pahaaD chaDhunuhunthyo ?

9. nepaalbaaTa pharkanubhandaa pahile tapaaiko ke garne bichaar chha ?
10. pahaaD chaDhnako laagi ke ke chhahinchha ?
11. tapaaile ke ke lyaaunu bhaeko chha ?
12. iskaTlyaanDmaa hiũdmaa kattiko hiũ parchha ?
13. hiũ pardaa tapaaĩ ke lagaaunuhunthyo ?
14. tapaaĩ aaepahhi kaThnaanDumaa hiũ pareko chha ki chhaina ?

LESSON 28

VOCABULARY

baaremaa	about	tyati belaa	at that time
bhaaDaa	fare, rent	yasko	it's, of this
tyas din	that day		

PART I

1. hijo diũso tapaaĩ gharmaa hunuhunnathyo ni. kahãã jaanubhaeko thiyo ?
   You weren't at your house yesterday afternoon. Where had you gone ?
   kati baje ? tapaaĩ mero gharmaa aaunubhaeko thiyo ra ?
   At what time ? Did you come to my place ?
2. ho, ma chaar baje tapaaĩko gharmaa gaeko thiẽ.
   Yes, I was there at 4 p. m.
   e ! ma tyati belaa sinemaa herna gaeko thiẽ.
   Oh ! I was at the movies then.
3. kun sinemaa herna jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   Which movie had you gone to ?
   'War and Peace' herna gaeko thiẽ...
   I had gone to see 'War and Peace ?
4. sinemaa kati baje siddhiyo ?
   When was the movie over ?
   chha baje siddhiyo .
   At six.
5. tapaaĩ ghar pugdaa kati bajeko thiyo ?
   What time was it when you arrived home ?
   ghar pugdaa saat bajeko thiyo.
   It was seven when I got home.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩharu asti kahãã jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   Where had you gone the day before yesterday ?
   haami pokharaa gaekaa thiyaũ.
   We had gone to Pokhara.

2. tapaaiharu pokharaamaa hũdaa maachhaapuchhre dekhieko thiyo ?	Was Machapuchhre out while you were in Pokhara ?
ahã dekhieko thiena.	No, it wasn't.
3. kina ?	Why ?
tyas din dherai baaklo baadal laageko thiyo.	It was thickly clouded that day.
4. paani pani pareko thiyo ?	Was it also raining ?
paani ta pareko thiena.	No, it wans't.

(b)

1. yahãã aaunubhandaa pahile nepaalko baaremaa sunekaa thiyau ?	Had you heard about Nepal before you came here ?
ali ali suneko thiẽ.	Yes, I had heard about it a little.
2. nepaalko baaremaa kunai kitaab paDhekaathiyau ?	Had you read any books on Nepal ?
euTaa maatra paDheko thiẽ.	Yes, I had read one.
3. kun kitaab paDhekaa thiyau ?	Which one ?
Toni heganko 'Nepal' paDheko thiẽ.	Toni Hagen's 'Nepal'.
4. bisTako 'People of Nepal' paDhekaa thienau ?	Handn't you read Bista's 'People of Nepal' ?
ahã ! tyo ta paDheko thiina.	No, I had not.
5. mero bichaarmaa timile tyo kitaab paDhnu parchha.	I'd recommend you to read the book.
hunchha, paDchhu.	O. K. I'll read it.

COMPREHENSION

gaeho haptaa ma pokharaa gaeko thiẽ. raam ra shyaam pani ma sanga gaekaa thie. kaaThmanDubaaTa pokharaasamma basko bhaaDaa

pachchis rupiyãã rahechha. baaTo raamro rahechha. malaai pokharaa asaadhyai ramaailo laagyo. ma pahile pokharaa kahilepani gaeko thiina tara yasko baaremaa suneko thiẽ. kaaThmandDubaaTa pokharaa jhanDai chha ghanTaa laagdo rahechha.

QUESTIONS

1. gaeko haptaa tapaaĩ kahãã kahãã jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
2. tapaaĩsanga ko ko gaekaa thie ?
3. tyahããsamma basko bhaaDaa kati rahechha ?
4. baaTo kasto rahechha ?
5. tapaaĩlaai pokharaa kasto laagyo ?
6. tapaaĩ pahile pani pokharaa jaanubhaeko thiyo ?
7. pokharaako baaremaa sunnubhaeko thiyo ta ?
8. pokharaa pugna kati ghanTaa laagdo rahechha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of the PAST PERFECT TENSE

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko thiẽ	gaeko thiina
tã	gaeko thiis	gaeko thiinas
u	gaeko thiyo	gaeko thiena
haami	gaekaa thiyaũ	gaekaa thienaũ
timi	gaekaa thiyau	gaekaa thienau
uniharu	gaekaa thie	gaekaa thienan
tapaaĩ	jaanu bhaeko thiyo	jaanu bhaeko thiena

Note the 'kaa' form with plural pronouns timi, haami and uniharu. In spoken Nepali, however, this distinction is not always made.

2. a.) The 'eko thiyo' form is very common with the form 'hunubhandaa pahile'.

maile nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile nepaali sikeko thiina.	Before coming to Nepal, I hadn't learned Nepali.

ii. kaaThmaanDu aaunubhandaa pahile usle moTar dekheko thiena.	Before coming to Kathmandu, he had never seen a car.
iii. Dhokaa laaunu bhandaa pahile maile sããcho lieko thie.	Before locking the door, I had taken the key.
iv. aphis baaTa niskanu bhandaa pahile batti nibhaaeko thiẽ.	Before leaving the office, I had turned off the light.

b. This form is often used in a situation when you want to say something in a kind of report or when you want to recall yours or someone's past life.

baale malaai yahĩ iskulmaa paDhna bhannu bhaeko thiyo.	My father had told me to study in this school.
maile haai iskulmaa aliali sanskrit paDheko thiẽ.	I had studied a little Sanskrit in high school.
u 1950 maa janmeko thiyo.	He was born in 1950.
wahãã paakistaan pani jaanu bhaeko thiyo.	He had also been to Pakistan.

c. This form is also commonly used with a verb daa (kheri) form:—

ma asti aaudaa timi utekaa thiyau.	When I came over to your house the day before yesterday you were sleeping
raam aaudaa kohipani uTheko thiena.	When Ram came over, nobody was up.
gopaalkãã jããdaa usko bahini Dhokaamaa ubhieki thii.	When we got over to Gopal's his sister was standing in the door way.

d. This form is also used to describe an activity of past relevance.

a) taapaaĩ hijo aaunu bhayo ?	Did you come over yesterday ?
aaina.	No, I didn't.
kina ?	Why ?

Taauko dukheko thiyo.	I had a headache.
b) jim nidaaeko thiena.	Jim wasn't asleep.
c) phalphul kuheko thiyo.	The fruit was rotten.
d) hijo baadal laageko thiyo.	It was cloudy yesterday.

This 'eko thiyo' form as described above can be used in a variety of situations not necessarily always coinciding with the English Past Perfect Tenses. Further study of the text and exposure to Nepali in conversation should reinforce the proper usage of this form.

3. Usage of rahechha, rahenachha. (also see lesson 24–Notes 3)

a) Noun rahechha

miThaai rahechha–Hey, its a piece of candy.

b) Noun Location rahechha

mero bhaai iskulmaa rahechha.	Hey, my brother is still in school.

1. verb rahenachha

paaine rahenachha.	Hey, it'e not available.
yahãã biyar paaine rahechha.	Hey, you can get beer here.

Note: 'rahechha' and 'rahenachha' are often contracted to 'raicha, and rainachha' Study the following examples–

usko tinwaTaa chhoraa rahechhan.	I found that he has three sons.
tarakaari piro rahechha.	Oh! the curry is hot.
rããgoko maasu miTho hune rahechha.	Buffalo meat is tasty (I just found out).
mero kalam jholaamaa rahechha	I found that my pen was in my bag.
mero saathi pani aaeko rahechha.	My friend has also come.

This structure is quite frequent in Nepali. It is used when the speaker suddenly becomes aware of something or has found out something he didn't know before. compare-'rahechha' with 'hunchha'-

kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto hunchha.	Potato is cheap in Kathmandu. (always so, compared to other places)
kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto rahechha.	I see that potatoes are cheap in Kathmandu. (It is a recent discovery for the speaker)

LESSON 29

VOCABULARY

bechnu	to sell	kattiko	how much
bekaar	jobless, useless	khojnu	to look for
bhiD	crowd	kisim	kind, type, sort
bideshi	foreigner	kohi	some
dikkalaagnu	to be bored	patrikaa	newspaper
gããjaa	marijuana	talab	salary
gaph garnu	to gossip	ustai	just like that

PART I

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile tapaaĩ kahãã hunuhunthyo, jim?
   ma amerikaamaa thiẽ.
   Jim ! Where were you before you came to Nepal ?
   I was in the U. S.
2. tapaaĩ ke gardai hunuhunthyo?
   ma bekaar thiẽ. kaam khojdai-thiẽ.
   What were you doing then ?
   I was unemployed. I was looking for a job.
3. kun kisimko kaam khojdai hunuhunthyo ?
   jasto paayo ustai
   What kind of job were you looking for ?
   Whatever was available.
4. bekaar basdaakheri tapaaĩlaai dikka laagdainathyo ?
   ekdam dikka laagthyo.
   Were not you bored when you were without job ?
   I was very bored.

PART II

1. hijo belukaa tapaaĩ ke gardai hunuhunthyo ?
   ma nayãã saDakmaa ghumdai thiẽ.
   What were you doing yesterday evening ?
   I was cruising around New Road.

2. tapaaĩko saathi ni ?	How about your friend ?
u pani masangai ghumdaithiyo.	He was also cruising around whith me.
3. tyatibelaa tyahãã maanisharuko kattiko bhiD thiyo ?	How big was the crowd of people there at that time ?
nikai bhiD thiyo.	It was really crowded.
4. tiniharu ke garirahekaa thie ?	What was everyone doing ?
kohi patrikaa kinirahekaa thie; dherai jaso gaph garirahekaa thie.	Some were buying newspapers but most of them were just gossiping.
5. ghar pharkãdaa kati bajeko thiyo ?	What was the time when you got back home ?
nau bajisakeko thiyo.	It was already nine o'clock.

(b)

1. timro keTi saathi ahile kahãã chha ?	Where is your girl friend these days ?
iraanmaa.	In Iran.
2. iraanmaa paDhiraheko chha ?	Is she going to school there ?
hoina, paDhiraheko chhaina.	No, she isn't.
3. kaam gariraheko chha ta ?	Is she working there ?
ho, angreji paDhaaune kaam gariraheko chha.	Yes, she is teaching English.
4. iraanmaa angreji paDhaaudaa ta nikkai paisaa dinchha, hoina ?	I guess they pay pretty well when you teach English in Iran ?
ho, usko talab raamro chha.	Yes, she gets a good salary.

(c)

1. Tam ke gari raheko chha ?	What is Tom doing ?
u sutiraheko chha.	He is sleeping.

2. kina ? uslaai sancho chhaina? ho, usko peT dukheko chha.	Why ? Is he sick ? Yes, he has a stomach ache.
3. usle peT dukheko ausadhi khāādai chha ? kunni ? hijo samma ta khaadai thiyo.	Is he taking medicine for his stomach ache ? He was taking some up until yesterday, but I don't know about today.
4. ke ausadhi khāādai thiyo tapaaī laai thaahaa chha ? tyo ta thaahaa chhaina.	Do you know what medicine he was taking ? That I don't know.

COMPREHENSION—

raam ra usko bhaai ek din basantapurtira ghumna gae. raam ko bhaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiena. basantapurmaa uniharule dherai kisimkaa maanisharu dekhe. kohi phalphul bechirahekaa thie, kohi bideshiharulaai puraano chijbij bechirahekaa thie. ek chin pachhi raam ra usko bhaai hanumaan Dhokaatira gae. hunumaan Dhokaa najikaiko euTaa mandirmaa duijanaa maanchhe gāājaa khaairahekaa thie. uniharuko kapaal laamo thiyo ra lugaa rangi changi. raam ra usko bhaai dubai laai ti maanchhe man parenan.

QUESTIONS

1. raam ra usko bhaai kahāā ghumna gae ?
2. raamko baaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiyo ?
3. uniharule tyahāā ke dekhe ?
4. ti maanisharu ke garirahekaa thie ?
5. ek chhin pachhi raam ra usko bhaai kataatira gae ?
6. mandirmaa uniharule ke dekhe ?
7. uniharu ke garirahekaa thie ?
8. uniharukaa kapaal ra lugaa kastaa thie ?
9. uniharulaai ti maanchhe man paryo ?

1. Conjugation of Past Progressive.

garnu	to do.
Affirmative	
ma gardaithiẽ.	I was doing.
tã gardaithiis.	You were doing
u gardaithiyo.	He was doing.
haami gardaithiyaũ.	We were doing.
timi gardaithiyau.	You were doing.
uniharu gardaithie.	They were doing.
tapaaĩ gardai hunuhunthyo.	You were doing.

Alternative Affirmative Form

ma gariraheko thiẽ.	I was doing.
tã gariraheko thiis.	You were doing.
u gariraheko thiyo.	He was doing.
haami garirahekaa thiyaũ.	We were doing.
timi garirahekaa thiyau.	You were doing.
uniharu garirahekaa thie.	They were doing.
tapaaĩ garirahanubhaeko thiyo.	You were doing.

Negative

ma gariraheko thiina.	I was not doing.
tã gariraheko thiinas.	You were not doing.
u gariraheko thiena.	He was not doing.
haami garirahekaa thienaũ.	We were not doing.
timi garirahekaa thienau.	You were not doing.
uniharu garirahekaa thienan.	They were not doing.
tapaaĩ garirahanubhaeko thiena	You were not doing.

You are advised to learn the first Affirmative Form. The alternative affirmative form is also heard but not as often as the first. The negative of the Alternative Form is also sometimes used but note the following when negating something in the first Past Progressive Form:

timi paDhdai thiyau ?	–Were you reading ?

hoina, ma saathisita kuraa gardaithiẽ.	–No, I was talking to my friend.

Instead of a negative form being applied, the person replying first denies that he was doing the activity asked in the question by saying 'hoina' or 'chhaina' and then says what he was actually doing in the first affirmative form of the past progressive tense.

2. The form 'eko chha' is translated into English in many ways, Study the following examp es.

jim suteko chha.	–Jim is sleeping.
aaja baadal laageko chha.	–It is cloudy today.
uniharu bhokaaekaa chhan.	–They are hungry.
dhaan paakeko chhaina.	–The rice is not ripe.
jen hissi pareko chha.	–Jane is cute.
mero Taauko dukheko chha.	–I have a headache.
mero ghaDi bigreko chha.	–My watch is broken.
mero ghaDi haraaeko chha.	–My watch is lost.
paaTh siddhieko chhaina.	–The lesson is not finished.
ainaa phuTeko chha.	–The mirror is broken.
koTmaa raato rang laageko chha.	–There is red color in the jacket.
tapaaiko lugaamaa dhulo laageko chha.	–Your clothes are dirty.
u nidaaeko chha.	He is sleeping (He has fallen asleep)
usko kukur mareko chhaina.	–His dog is not dead.
sinemaa shuru bhaeko chhaina.	–The film hasn't started.

Study the following examples where the form 'eko' is used as an adjective.

taareko aalu – fried potato.	phuTeko ainaa – broken mirror
kuheko phalphul – rotten fruit	bigreko ghaDi – broken watch
hissi pareko keTi – cute girl.	

LESSON 30

VOCABULARY

Khet baari	—	field, farm
khojnu	—	to look for
pakaaunu	—	to cook
samaaj shaastra	—	sociology

PART I

(a)

1. namaste ! dherai bhayo bheT nabhaeko !	Hello ! I haven't seen you for a long time.
namaste ! ho, dheraibhayo.	Yes, it has been long.
2. aajabholi ke gariraheka chhau?	What are you doing these days ?
kehipani gariraheko chhaina.	I am not doing anything
kam khojdai chhu.	I am looking for a job.
3. kasto kaam garna sakchhau ?	What kind of work can you do ?
khaanaa pakaune, ghar sapha garne.	Cooking, house cleaning.
4. ek mahinaako kati linchhau ?	How much do you want a month?
pahile kaam gardaa mahinaako dui sae thiyo.	It was two hundred a month when I worked last time.
5. ahile pani tyatimaa nai garchhau?	Would you work for the same now also ?
garchhu.	Yes. I would.
6. usobhae bholidekhi makãã aau.	If so, come to my place starting tomorrow.
hunchha, ma aaũchhu.	O. kay, I will come.

Part II

(b)

1. tapaaĩko bhaai aaja bholi kahãã chha ?	Where is your younger brother these days ?
amerikaamaa chha.	He's in Amerika.
2. ke gariraheko chha ?	What is he doing ?
kalejmaa paDhiraheko chha.	He is going to college.
3. u ke bishaya paDhiraheko chha?	What's he studying ?
u samaaj shaastra paDhiraheko. chhı.	He is studying sociology.

(b)

1. nepaalmaa aaunubhandaa pahile tapaaĩ kahãã hunu hunthyo ?	Where were you before coming to Nepal ?
ma yuropmaa thiẽ.	I was in Europe.
2. tyahãã ke garirahanu bhaeko thiyo ?	What were you doing there ?
tyahãã kaam gariraheko thiẽ.	I was working there.
3. paDhi pani rahanu bhaeko thiyo ki ?	Were you also going to school ?
ahã, paDhiraheko thiina.	No, I wasn't.
4. ke kaam garirahanu bhaeko thiyo ?	What were you doing ?
dherai jaso khet baarimaa kaam ra kahilekaahĩ angreji paDhaaune garathẽ.	I was working on farms most of of the time and sometimes teaching English.

(c)

1. timi hijo belukaa kahãã gayau?	Where did you go yesterday evening ?
ma mero keTi saathikãã gaẽ.	I went to my girl friend.
2. timi tyahãã jããdaakheri u ke gariraheko thiyo ?	What was she doing when you went there ?
u saathisanga kuraa gariraheko thiyo .	She was talking to a friend.
3. keko baaremaa kuraa garirahe-ko thiyo, timilaai thaahaa chha?	Do you know what they were taking about ?
ahã thaahaa chhaina.	No, I don't.
4. timi tyahãã kati belaa samma basyau ?	How long did you stay there ?
rati das baje samma basẽ.	I stayed there until ten P. M.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of the '. . **iraheko—**' form

A. PRESENT

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	paDhiraheko chhu	chhaina
tã	paDhiraheko chhas	chhainas
u	paDhiraheko chha	chhaina
haami	paDhirahekaa chhaũ	chhainaũ
timi	paDhirahekaa chhau	chhainau
uniharu	paDhirahekaa chhan	chhainan
tapaaĩ	paDhirahanu bhaeko chha	chhaina

7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galaĩchaa bichhaaeko chha ?
8. salleridekhi tin maail TaDhaa kun Thaaũ chha ?
9. tyahãã banekaa galaĩchaa kastaa hunchhan ?
10. tapaai chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **baas paainchha**– lit: *Is shelter available here ?*

– a very common expression used while aking for overnight lodg'ng during trekking.

2. Learn the following:

jasari pani	any how, by all means
jati pani	any amount
jataa pani	everywhere, anywhere
jasle pani	anybody

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.

B. PAST

PRONOUNS	VERB	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	paDhiraheko	thiẽ	thiina
tã	paDhiraheko	thiis	thiinas
u	paDhiraheko	thiyo	thiena
haami	paDhirahekaa	thiyaũ	thienaũ
timi	paDhirahekaa	thiyau	thienau
uniharu	paDhirahekaa	thie	thienan
tapaaĩ	paDhirahanu bhaeko	thiyo	thiena

LESSON 31

aadi	etc.	nambari	a hundred rupee note
bããki	left over, remaining, very, exceedingly		
bichaar	thought, idea.	saaTi dinu	to change (money)
gaaũle	rural.		
hajaaraũ	thousands.	sajilai	easily.
harek	every.	saknu	to be able to.
hawaaipatra	aerogram.	sundar	beautiful, nice, pretty.
		taalim	training.

PART I

1. malaai Tikat dinus na.	Please give me some stamps.
kati kati jaane diũ ?	Of what denominations ?
2. pachchis paise daswaTaa dinus ani ek rupiyãã jaane aaThwaTaa.	Give me ten 25 paisa stamps and eight one rupee ones.
hawas.	Okay, sir.
3. hawaai patra pani ta hola ni ?	Do you also have aerograms ?
chha, katiwaTaa chaahine yahãã laai ?	Yes, I do, How many do you need ?
4. DeDh rupiyãã waalaa pandhra waTaa dinus ta.	Please give me fifteen one rupee and fifty paise aerograms.
hawas.	O. K.
tapaal nikaai dherai chiTThi lekhnu hunchha ho ?	Do you write many letters !
5. ã saathiharu laai chiTThi nalekheko dherai bhayo.	Well, its been long time since I have written letters to my friends.
jammaa kati bhayo ?	How much is it altogether ?
tettis rupiyãã dinus.	Give me thirty three rupees please.
6. masanga nambari maatra chha.	I only have a hundred rupee note.
hunchha ma saaTi diũlaa.	That's all right. I can change it.

Part II

(a)

1. tirkhaa laagyo bhane tapaaĩ ke garnuhunchha ?	What do you do if you get thirsty ?
paani khaanchhu.	I drink water.
2. bhok laagyo bhane ni ?	What about if you get hungry ?
bhaat khaanchhu.	I eat rice.
3. Taauko dukhyo bhane ke garnu hunchha ni ?	What do you do if you have a headache ?
asapirin khaanchhu.	I take aspirin.
4. disaa laagyo bhane ni ?	What do you do when you have diarrhoea ?
peragorik khaanchhu.	I take paragoric.

(b)

1. taalim siddhie pachhi tapaaĩ ke garnuhunchha ?	What are you going to do when training is over ?
gaaũmaa paDhaauna jaanchhu.	I am going to teach in a village.
2. gaaũ man parena bhane ni ?	What if you don't like the village ?
amerikaa pharkanchhu.	I will go back to the States.
3. amerikaamaa ke garnu hunchha ni ?	What'll you do in the States ?
amerikaamaa gaera kaam khojchhu.	I will look for a job when I get there.
4. kaam paaunubhaena bhane ke garnu hunchha ta ?	What'll you do if you don't get a job ?
paDhchhu.	I'll go to school.

(c)

1. aaja diũso ke garne bichaar chha ?	What are you thinking of doing this afternoon ?
saathiharu aae bhane taas khelne.	If my friends come along I'll play cards.
2. aaenan bhane ni ?	If they don't ?
aaenan bhane ghumna jaanchhu.	If they don't I'll go for a walk.
3. paani parlaa jasto chha ni aaja ta ?	Looks like it's going to rain to-day ?
paani paryo bhane raksi khaaera basnu parlaa.	If it tains I'll spend the day drinking raksi.
4. miTho raksi chha bhane ma pani baschhu.	If you have good raksi, I'll also stay on.
miTho ta chhaina, tyahi hijoko baaki alikati chha.	I don't have any good stuff. I just have a little bit left over from yesterday.

COMPREHENSION:–

nepalkaa gaaũ, gaaũle jiwan, pahaD, himaalaya aadi herna man laagyo bhane pokharaa jaanu parchha. hawaai jahajmaa gayo bhane pokharaa paune ek ghanTaamaa pugna sakinchha. basmaa gayo bhane saat ghanTaa laagchha tara mini basmaa gayo bhane pããch ghanTaamaa sajilai pugincchha pokharaako phewaa taal pani nikai sundar chha. jomsom bhanne Thaũ pokharaako uttartira parchha. jomsommaa harek barsha hajaaraũ bideshiharu ghumna jaanchhan. tyahãã pugna chaar pããch din laagchha. tara jahajmaa gayo bhane ta aadhaa ghanTaa mai pugna sakinchha.

QUESTIONS

1. nepaalmaa gaaũ, pahaaD aadi herna kahãã jaanu parchha ?
2. hawaai jahajmaa gayo bhane kati samayamaa pugna sakinchha ?
3. basmaa gayo bhane kati ghanTaa laagchha ?

4. minibasmaa gayo bhane ni ?
5. phewaataal kasto chha ?
7. jomsommaa harek barsha kati bideshi ghumna jaanchhan ?
8. tyahãã pugna kati din laagchha ?
9. jahaajmaa gayo bhane ni ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1, Conditional clause **'bhane'.**

paani paryo bhane ma jaanna	If it rains, I won't go.
or	
paani pare ma jaanna.	
uniharu aaebhane ma aaũlaa.	I'll come if they come.
dherai kaam garyo bhane thakaai laagchha.	If you work a lot you get tired.
ããp mahango bhae nakina.	Don't buy the mangoes if they are expensive.

Note that the verb ending of the subordinate conditional clause is generally in the past tense.

yahãã–polite for tapaai
pugna sakinchha– can be reached.

LESSON 32

VOCABULARY

audhi	extremely
baas	shelter, lodging
biu	seed
chheu	side
chhoDi dinu	to leave
jahile pani	always, all the time
jaslaai pani	to any one
je pani	anything
jun pani	any (thing)
lagi dinu	to take, carry something for some one.
palTinu	to lie down
sadar mukaam	district centre
thakaai	fatigue
Thik hunu	to be all right
uhi	the same, the very one

PART I

1. e didi ! yahãã baas paainchha? — Oh sister ! Can I get a place to stay here ?

   paainchha. kati janaa hunu-hunchha ? — Sure. How many of you are there?

2. tin janaa chhaũ. — There are three of us.

   khaanaa ke chha ? — What kind of food do you have ?

   uhi daal bhaat ta ho ni, aru ke hunu ! — Lentils and cooked rice, of course. What else would we have ?

3. maasu chhaina ra ? — Don't you have any meat ?

   maasu ta kukhuraa kaaTnu parchha. — We'll have to kill a chicken for meat.

4. sutne Thaaũ kataa chha ni ?	Where is a place to sleep ?
maathi koThaa chha.	There's a room upstairs.
5. lau chhiTo bhaat pakaaunos.	O.K. Please hurry and cook the
haami ek chhin palTinchhaũ.	meal. We'll lie down for a while.
saarhai thaakekaa chhaũ.	We are very tired.
raksi khaanus na. thakaai	Drink some raksi. It'll take care
Thik bhai haalchha ni	of your fatigue.

Part II

(a)

1. jim raksi khaanchha ?	Does Jim drink raksi ?
khaanchha.	Yes, he does.
2. Tim ni ?	How about Tim ?
Tim pani khaanchha ?	He does too.
3. Timko bhaai ni ?	How about Tim's brother ?
u pani khaanchha.	He drinks too.
4. ko raksi khaanchha.	Who drinks raksi ?
jo pani khaanchha.	Everybody drinks raksi.

(b)

1. asanmaa churoT paainchha ?	Are cigarettes available in Asan ?
paainchha.	Yes, they are available.
2. aalu ni ?	How about potatoes ?
aalu pani paainchha.	Potatoes are also available.
3. biu paainchha ki ?	Do you think seeds are available there ?
paainchha. kina napaainu ?	Sure. Why not ?
4. asanmaa ke ke paainchha ?	What's available in Asan ?
asanmaa je pani paainchha.	Everything is available in Asan.

(a)

1. tapaaI bholi pokharaa jaane re.	I hear that you are going to Pokhara
hoina ?	tomorrow ? Is that right ?
jaane bhaneko ho.	I've thought about going.
2. yo chiTThi lagi dinus na.	Could you take this letter for me?
hunchha. lagi diũlaa.	Sure. I'll take it for you.
kaslaai dinẽ ?	Who shall I give it to ?
jaslaai die pani hunchha.	You can give it to anybody.
4. gharmaa kohi nabhae ni ?	What if there isn't anybody at home ?
mero ghar chhewaimaa euTaa pasal chha. tyahãã chhoDi die hunchha.	There is a store by the side of my house. You can leave it there.

COMPREHENSION.

pohor ma solukhumbutira ghumna gaeko thiẽ. himaalayako najikai bhaekole tyataatira jahile pani jaaDo hunchha. tysaile tyahãã jo pani nyaano lugaa lagaaũchan. soluko sadarmukaam salleri ho. sallerimaa euTaa nikai raamro serpaa hoTel chha. tyo hoTelko jun pani koThaamaa galaichha bichhaaeko chha. salleridekhi tin maail TaaDhaa chyaalsaa bhanne Thaaũ chha. tyahãã banekaa galaichha audhi raamraa hunchhan.

QUESTIONS.

1. pohor tapaaI kahãã ghumna janu bhaeko thiyo ?
2. tyataatira kahile jaaDo hunchha ?
3. kina ?
4. tyahãã ko nyaano lugaa lagaaũchhan ?
5. soluko sadar mukaam kahãã ho ?
6. soluko serpaa hoTel kasto chha ?

7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galaIchaa bichhaaeko chha ?
8. salleridekhi tin maail TaDhaa kun Thaan chha ?
9. tyahaa banekaa galaIchaa kastaa hunchhan ?
10. tapaai chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **baas paainchha**– lit: *Is shelter available here ?*

   – a very common expression used while aking for overnight lodging during trekking.

2. Learn the following:

jasari pani	any how, by all means
jati pani	any amount
jataa pani	everywhere, anywhere
jasle pani	anybody

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.

LESSON 23

VOCABULARY

gaarho laagnu	—	to find difficult.
gaeko	—	last (as in past)
jhɜnDai	—	almost.
sikchhak	—	teacher.

(a)

1. hijo kina aaunu bhaena ? Taauko dukhekole.	Why didn't you come yesterday ? Because I had a headache.
2. kina Taauko dukhyo ta ? dherai raksi khaaekole.	Why did you have a headache ? Because I drank too much raksi.
3. ke ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ? kehipani khaaina.	What medicine did you take ? I didn't take anything.
4. kina nakhaaeko ta ? khaana man nalaagekole.	Why not ? Because I didn't want to.

(b)

1. aaja bihaana kina abelaa uThnubhayo ?	Why did you get up late this morning ?
2. hijo raati abelaa sutekole.	Because I went to bed late last night.
3. kina abelaa sutnunbhayo ta ? mero saathiharu aaekaale.	Why did you go to bed late ? Because my friends came over.
4. saathiharu kina aaekaa thie ta ? hijo mero gharmaa bihaa bhoj bhaekole meraa saathiharu aaekaa thie.	Why did your friends come ? My friends came over because there was a wedding feast at my house yesterday.

(c)

1. chiyaamaa kina dudh raakhe-nau ?	Why didn't you put milk in the tea ?
dudh nabhaeko hunaale.	Because there isn't any milk.
2. dudh lina kina nagaeko ta ?	Why didn't you go out and buy milk ?
phursad nabhaekohunaale.	Because I didn't have any free time.
3. kina phursad bhaena ?	Why didn't you have the time ?
lugaa dhunu parekole.	Because I had to wash clothes.
4. sabai lugaa dhoyau ta ?	Did you wash all the clothes ?
dhoina.	No, I didn't.
5. kina na dhoeko ta ?	Why did not you wash all of them?
saabun siddhiekole.	Because I did not have enough soap.

COMPREHENSION :–

maaik nepaal aaeko jhanDai tin barsha bhai sakyo. u bandipurko euTaa iskulmaa paDhaaũchha. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile amerikaa maa sikchhak talim liekole uslaai paDhaauna gaarho laagdaina. uslaai Treking assaddhyai man parchha. gaeko hiũdmaa uslaai jomsom jaana manlaageko thiyo tara sancho nabhaekole jaana sakena. hijo nayãã saDaktira ghumna jããdaa uslaai bheTeko thiẽ. aaune haptaa jomsom jaanchu bhanthyo. malaai pani jaaũ bhanthyo. tara ke garne? malaai phursad chhaina.

QUESTIONS :–

1. maaik nepaal aaeko kati barsha bhayo ?
2. u ke garchha ?
3. uslaai paDhaauna kina gaarho laagdaina ?
4. uslaai Treking kattiko manparchha ?
5. gaeko hiũdmaa uslaai ke garna man laageko thiyo ?

6. jaana sakyo ta ?
7. kina ?
8. hijo uslaai bheTnubhaeko thiyo ?
9. ke gardaa ?
10. usle ke bhanthyo ?
11. tapaaI kina jomsom jaanuhunna ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

Forms–

nagaeko hunaale
bhaeko hunaale
na lageko hunaale
gaeko hunaale
napaaeko hunaale
bhaekole, laagekole, naaaekole, napaaekole

USAGE

Study the following examples:–

Paisaa nabhaekole kehipani kinina.	I didn't buy anything because I didn't have any money.
thupro kaam bhaeko hunaale baahira jaanaa.	Since I have lots to do, I am not going to go out.
Taauko dukheko hunaale gopal iskul aaena.	Gopal didn't come to school, because he had a headache.
bidyaarthiharu bhaagekole guru risaaunu bhayo.	The teacher got angry because the students ran away.
paani napareko hunale baaTo bigreko chhaina.	The road is not damaged, as it has not rained yet.
thakaai laagekole kaam garna sakdina.	I can't work because I am tired.

NOTES:–

a) **kinabhane** is the Nepali equivalent of *because*. but it is often left out in every day speech. Note the following examples carefully.

I. tyo jholaa kina nakineko ?	Why didn't buy that bag ?
paisaa thiena. saarai mahango bhayo.	I don't have money. It's very expensive.
II. hijo iskul jaanubhayo ?	Did you go to school yesterday ?
gaina.	No, I didn't.
kina ?	Why ?
Taauko dukhyo. jaana sakina	I had a headache and couldn't go.
III. ali khaanos na.	Have some more, please.
bho khaanna.	No, I won't
kina ?	Why ?
aghaai sakeko chhu.	I'm full.
IV. kina aaunu bhaena ?	Why didn't you come ?
kaam paryo.	I had work to do.

b) The forms **"era"** and **'ekole'** are also used in the same context. It connects two clauses and implies cause and effect.

paisaa nabhaera nakineko.	I didn't buy it because
(nabhaekole)	I didn't have any money.
Taauko dukhera nagaeko.	I didn't come because
(dukhekole)	I had a headache.
kaam parera aauna sakina.	I couldn't come because
(parekole)	I had work to do.
dherai paani parera kheti bigriyo.	Because of heavy rainfall the crops were damaged.
TikaT napaaera jaana sakekaa chhainaũ.	We have not been able to go because we didn't get tickets.

2. **'re'** is a particle often used in spoken Nepali.

It is used at the end of a statement to denote second hand information

Examples:—

u bholi jaane re.	I hear that he is going tomorrow.
wahãã paas hunubhayo re.	I hear that They say that he passed. So and so says that

'sodhthyo' literaly, *he used to ask*– this form is used in indirect speech.

tapaaĩ pani masanga jaane bhanera usle malaai sodhthyo.	He asked me if I would like to go with him.
usle bholi aaũchhu bhanthyo.	He said that he would come tomorrow.

LESSON 34

VOCABULARY

atyanta	very much
kohi	anybody, somebody
naumaaleko	unboiled
niko hunu	to be well, to be cured
umaaleko	boiled
uThaaunu	to wake-up

(a)

1. ek ghanTaa aghi kohi aaeko thiyo ?	Did anyone come here an hour ago ?
ho, ek jaanaa maanchhe aaeko thiyo.	Yes, one man did come.
2. ko aaeko thiyo ?	Who was it ?
mero saathi.	My friend.
3. u aajaa bholi ke gardaichha ?	What's he doing these days ?
u iskulmaa paDhaaũdaichha.	He's teaching in a school.
4. usle paDhaaune iskul kahãã chha ?	Where is the school he teaches at?
usle paDhaaune iskul pokharaa najikaiko gaaũmaa chha.	The school where he teaches is in a village near Pokhara.
5. u basne gaaũko naam ke ho ni ?	What's the name of the village where he lives.
u basne gaaũko naam deuraali. ho.	Deurali is the name of the village where he lives.

(b)

1. kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe ko ho ?	Who is the man wearing the black cap. ?

kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe prakaash ho.	The man wearing the black cap is Prakash.
2. u paDhne iskul yahãã baaTa kati TaaDhaa chha?	How far is the school where he studies from here ?
u paDhne ishul yahãã baaTa najikai chha.	The schbol he goes to is close to here.
3. u basne Deraa mahango chha ki sasto chha ?	Is the apartment he lives in expensive or cheap ?
u basne Deraa sasto chha.	It is cheap.
4. usko iskulmaa paDhaaune masTarharu kati chhan ?	How many teachers teach in his school ?
baara janaa jati chhan.	There are about twelve.

(c)

1. tapaaI ke kitaab paDhdai hunuhunchha ?	What book are you reading ?
ma *King Lear* paDhdaichhu.	I'm reading *King Lear*.
2. *King Lear* kasle lekheko ho ?	Who wrote *King Lear ?*
King Lear Shakespearle lekheko ho.	*King Lear* was written by Shakespear.
3. Shakespear le lekheko aru pani kitaab paDhnu bhaeko chha ?	Have you read any other books written by him ?
ho, maile *Hamlet* ra *The Tempest* pani paDheko chhu.	Yes, I have read *Hamlet* and The *Tempest* as well.
4. tapaaIlaai unle lekheko kitaab man parchha ?	Do you like books written by him. ?
ho, dherai man parchha.	Yes. I like them very much.

(d)

1. jim kasto paani khaanchha ?	What sort of water does Jim drink?
u umaaleko paani khaanchha.	He drinks boiled water.

2. naumaaleko paani khaayo bhane uslaai ke hunchha ? uslaai peT dukchha.	What happens when he drinks unboiled water ? His stomach hurts.
3. peT dukhdaakheri u ke garchha ? usle aaphno aphisko DaakTarle dieko ausadhi khaanchha.	What does he do when his stomach hurts ? He takes medicine given by the doctor at this office.
4. tyo DaakTarle dieko ausadhile uslaai niko hunchha ? dheraijaso niko hunchha.	Does the medicine given by that doctor make him well ? Yes, it usually makes him well.

COMPREHENSION

maaikle hijo usko baale lekheko chiTThi paayo. chiTThi paaũdaa uslaai atyanta khusi laagyo. kinabhane usle chhiTThi napaeko ek mahinaa bhaeko thiyo. chiTThi paDhi sakepachhi u usko saathi jimko Deraamaa gayo. jim sutiraheko raehchha. maaikle uslaai uThaayo ra sinemaa herna jaane kuraa garyo. jimko pani sinemaa herna jaane bichaar thiyo. chiyaa siyaa khaaera uniharu sinemaa haltira gae. tara TikaT siddhisakeko rah chha. tyaskaaran uniharule 'black' garne maanchhe khojera pãch rupiyãako TikatTlaai aaTh rupiyãã diera here.

QUESTIONS—

1. maaikle hijo kasle lehheko chiTThi paayo ?
2. chiTThi paaũdaa uslaai kasto laagyo ?
3. kina ?
4. chiTThi paDhisakepachhi u kahãã gayo ?
5. jim ke garirakeko rahechha ?
6. maaikle uslaai uThaaera ke kuraa garyo ?
7. jimko ke bichaar thiyo ?

8. chiyaa siyaa khaaera uniharu kataatira gae ?
9. uniharule kina 'black' garne maanchhe khoje ?
10. uniharule pããch rupiyããko TikaTlaai kati diera sinemaa here ?

Grammar Notes

1. In English Relaative Pronouns or Adverbs are usually used to introduce Adjectival clauses. In Nepali, however they are seldom used in this way. Study the following examples—

tapaaĩle sodheko prashna	The question that you asked
jaapaanmaa baneko saamaan	Things (that are) made in Japan
tapaaĩle dieko kalam	The pen that you gave
timile lekhne kitaab	the book that you'll write
usle kinne moTar	The car that he's going to buy
umaaleko paani.	boiled water
kuheko ããp	rotten mango
raato saari laaeko keTi	The girl in the red sari

LESSON 35

VOCABULARY

bhaansaa garnu	to eat a meal (polite)
bhuraa	fingerling
bish	poison
jangali	wild
kisaan	farmer
maachhaa	fish
maadhyamik bidyaalaya	secondary school
maarnu	to kill
maddat	help, assistance
maddat garnu	to assist
matsya bikaas kendra	Fisheries Development Centre
paalnu	to raise
phursad	leisure
pokhari	pond
rahar	desire
saaTnu	to trade, to change
sukaaunu	to dry

PART I

1. tapaaī yahi gaaũmaa basnu-hunchha ?
   Do you live in this village ?

   hajur.
   That's right.

2. yahĩko maadhyamik bidyaalayamaa paDhaaunu hunchha ki kaso ?
   Do you teach in the secondary school here ?

   hoina, ma ta kisaanharulaai maachhaa paalna maddat garchhu.
   No, I help farmers raise fish.

3. malaai pani maachhaa paalne rahar chha. maachhaa paalna ke ke garnu parchha ?	I also would like to raise fish. What does one need to do to raise fish ?
4. tapaaĩko pokhari chha ki chhaina ?	Do you have a pond or not ?
chha.	Yes, I do.
5. sabbhandaa pahile pokharilaai sukaaunu parchha ani bish raakhnu parchha.	First of all you should dry the pond and then poison it.
bish raakhera tyasmaa bhaekaa jangali maachhaaharulaai maarnu parchha.	You should kill all the wild fish in it by puttng posion in the pond.
bhuraa kinna kahãã paainchha ni ?	Where can I buy fingerlings ?
5. bhuraa ta matsya bikaas kendra maa paainchha.	Fingerlings are available at the Fisheries Development Centre.
haamro gaaũtira pani aaunus na phursadmaa.	Please come to our village too when you have time
6. hunchha. aarko haptaatira aaũlaa.	O. K. I'll come next week.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩko ghaDiko kati paryo ?	How much did you pay for your watch ?
aDhaai saya.	Two hundred and fifty rupees.
2. kineko kati bhayo ?	How long ago did you buy it ?
saat barsha bhayo.	Seven years ago.
3. puraano bhaechha.	It's quite old.
samaya raamrosanga dĩdaina holaa, hoina ?	It doesn't keep good time, does it?

puraano bhaetaa pani samaya ta raamro dinchha.	Even though it's old, it keeps good time.
4. merosanga saaTaũ na ta ? bho. saaTdina.	How about trading it for mine ? No, thanks.

(b)

1. bhaansaa bhayo tapaaĩko ? khaaeko chhaina.	Did you eat ? No, I haven't.
2. bhaat nakhaaeko bhaeta bhok laageko holaa tapaaĩlaai, hoina? bhaat nakhaaeko bhae pani bhok laageko chhaina.	If you haven't eaten, you must be hungry ? Even though I haven't eaten I'm not hungry.
3. kina ta ? bihaana abelaa khaaeko thiẽ.	How come ? I had my morning meal late.
4. khaanaa nakhaaepani chiyaa siyaa khaana jaawaũ. hunchha, jaawaũ.	Even if you don't want to eat any food, let's go to have some tea. O. K. Let's go.

COMPREHENSION.

jeph nepaal aaeko pããch mahinaa maatra bhae pani u raamro sanga nepaali bolna sakchha. u basne gaaũ dherai ramaailo nabhae pani uslaai tyo gaaũ man pareko chha. usle dherai jaso aaphno bhaansele pakaaeko nepaali khaanaa khaae pani kahile kahĩ ameriki khaanaa pakaaera khaanchha. usle paDhaaune bidyaalayamaa pug na pug saat saya bidyaarthiharu paDhchhan. tyati dherai bidyaarthi bhaepani bidyaalayamaa keTiharuko sankhyaa bhane nikai kam chha. usko Deraa baaTa bidyaalaya dui maail TaaDhaa chha. TaaDhaa bhaepani u sadhaĩ hĩDera jaanchha.

QUESTIONS.

1. jeph nepaal aaeko kati mahinaa bhayo ?
2. u nepaal aaeko pããch mahinaa maatra bhae pani u kasto nepaali bolchha ?
3. u basne gaaũ kasto chha ?
4. uslaai usko gaaũ man pareko chha ta ?
5. u dherai jaso kun kisimko khaanaa khaanchha ?
6. kasle pakaaũchha ni ?
7. u sadhaĩ nepaali khaanaa khaanchha ta ?
8. usle paDhaaune bidyaalayamaa keTiharuko sankyhaa kati chhaa?
7. jephko DeraabaaTa bidyaalaya najik chha ki TaaDhaa chha ?
10. u saaikalmaa bidyaalaya jaanchha ?
11. kasari jaanchha ta ?
12. tapaaĩ bhae tyati laamo baaTo hĩDera jaanuhunthyo holaa ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1) Expression of contrast (*but, though, even if* clauses).

khaanaa piro bhaetaa pani malaai miTho laagyo.	The food is hot but I like it.
u moTo bhaetaa pani kamjor chha.	He is fat but weak.
khaanaa nakhaaetaa pani malaai bhok laageko chhaina.	Though I haven't eaten I'm not hungry.

FORMS AND USAGES;

Study the following eaxmples carefully and note the forms and usages:-

1) kaaThmaandDu raajdhaani bhaepani malaai man pardaina.	Though Kathmandu is the capital I don't like it.
2) raame dublo bhae pani baliyo thiyo.	Though Rame was thin he was strong.

3) mero bhaai moTo bhae pani kamjor chha.	My younger brother is weak though he is fat.
4) mero ghaDi puraano bhae pani Taaim raamro dinchha.	Though my watch is an old one it keeps good time.
5) usle bi. e. pass gare pani kaam paaeko chhaina.	Though he has a B. A. he hasn't gotten any job.
6) u khub koshis gare pani paas huna saktaina.	Though he tries very hard he can't pass.
7) gopal naaae pani ma aaũchhu.	I'll come even if Gopal doesn't come.
8) khaanaa nakhaaetaapani bhok laageko chhaina.	I'm not hungry though I haven't eaten.
9) raamlaai dekhe pani bolaaina.	Though I saw Ram I didn't call him.
10) Taauko dukhe pani u kaam gardai chha.	Though he has a headache he is working.
11) paani pare pani garmi chha.	Though it rained, it is hot.
12) yo gaaũmaa dhaaraa nabhae pani paaniko dukkhaa chhaina.	Though there are no water taps, there is no scarcity of water.
13) aaja sããjha aaunos, hai.	Please come (to my place) this evening.
miTing chha. Dhilo hunchha ki.	There is a meeting, It might be late.
Dhilo bhaepani aaunu holaa.	Please come even if it is late.

2. **je, Jahãã etc. e pani**

jahãã gaepani u chhoraalaai sangai laijaanchha.	He takes his son with him wherever he goes.
jo aae pani ma chhaina bhanidinu.	Whoever comes, tell (him) that I'm not here.
solTimaa je khaaepani mahango chha.	Whatever you eat at the Soaltee, it is expensive.

je aushadhi khaae pani sancho bhaena.	No matter what medicine I take, I still don't feel well.
jahile aaepani u gharmaa hũdaina.	He is not home no matter when I go.

3. epani hunchha

Examples :

kaam sakiyo raam ?	Is the work finished, Ram ?
sakiyo .	Yes, it is,
uso bhae timi gae pani hunchha.	In that case, you can go.
maile ke ke khaana hunchha DaakTar ?	What can I eat doctor ?
piro, amilo baahek je khaaepani hunchha.	You can eat anything except hot and sour things.

4. epani na ..epani

timi gaepani nagaepani ma ta jaanchhu	Whether you go or not I am going.

LESSON 36

VOCABULARY

anushaashan	discipline	maanabiki shaastra	humanities
badmaas	mischiveous	raastra bhaashaa	national language
bigyaan	science	rusi	Russian
byabahaar	treatment	sanskrit	Sanskrit
ghanTaaghar	clock-Tower	sanskriti	Culture
dwaaraa	by	sarkaari	Government (Adj.)
kaaryaalaya	office	taalim	training
		sajaaya	punishment

(a)

1. nepaalko sabbhandaa puraano kalej kun ho. ?	Which is the oldest college in Nepal ?
tri chandra kalej ho.	Tri-chandra college.
2. tyo kalej kahããnira chha ?	Where is that college ?
ratna paark najikai ghanTaa ghar sangai chha.	It's near Ratna Park, very close to the clock-tower.
3. tyahãã kun kun bishaya paDhaainchha ?	What subjects are taught there ?
bigyaan ra maanabiki shaastra paDhaainchha.	Science and Humanities.
4. tyahhãã paDhne bidyaarthiharu-sanga paisaa liinchha ki liidaina?	Do the students who go there have to pay tuition fees ?
liinchha.	Yes, they do.

1. nepaalko sarkaari kaaryaalaya harumaa kun bhaasha bolinchha ?
   nepaali bhaashaa bolinchha.

   What language is spoken in the government offices in Nepal ?
   Nepali.

2. iskul, kalejharumaa ni ?
   tyahããpani nepaali naĩ bolinchha.

   How about in schools and colleges?
   Nepali is spoken there as well.

3. kina aru bhaashaa bolidaĩna ?
   nepaali bhaashaa raastra bhaashaa bhaekole.

   Why aren't other languages spoken
   Because Nepali is the national language of Nepal.

4. tyahãã chiThThiharu pani nepaali bhaashaamaa naĩ lekhinchha ?
   ho, nepaali bhaashaamaa naĩ lekhinchha.

   Are the letters there also written in Nepali ?
   Yes, they are also written in Nepali

(c)

1. piskorko taalimmaa kati ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha ?
   ek dinko chaar dekhi chha ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha.

   How many hours of Nepali is taught in a Peace Corps training ?
   Four to six hours a day.

2. aru ke ke sikaainchha ni –
   nepaalko sanskriti ra swayam sewakle garne kaamko baare-maa pani sikaainchha.

   What else is taught ?
   Nepali culture and the nature of the job the volunteers are going to do.

3. yi kuraaharu nepaali dwaaraa sikaainchha ki amerikiharu dwaara ?
   nepaali ra amerikiharu dubai dwaara sihaainchha.

   Are these things taught by Nepalis or Americans ?
   They are taught both by Nepalis and Americans.

4. taalim kaaThmaanDumaa diinchha ki aru Thaaũmaa diinchha ?	Is the training given in Kathmandu or somewhere else ?
dheraijaso kaaThmmanDu baahira gaaũmaa diinchha.	Most of the time, it is given in villages outside of Kathmandu.

Comprehension

maaikle paDhaaune iskul yahi ho. yo iskulmaa angreji nepaali ra sanskrit bhaashaa paDhaaĩnchha tara yahãã hindi, rusi aadi bhaashaaharu paDhaaĩdaina.yo iskul nepaalkaa raamraa iskul maddhe ek ho. yahãã basne keTaakeTilaai raamro khaanaa diinchha. iskulmaa harek haptaa euTaa sinemaa dekhaainchha. yo iskul pus ra maaghmaa banda garinchha. klaasmaa Dhilo aaune, badmaasi garne, raamro byabahaar nagarne keTaakeTilaai sajaaya pani diinchha, tyas kaaran iskulmaa bidyaartkiharuko anushaashan raamro chha.

Question

1. maaaikle paDhaaune iskul kun ho ?
2. yahãã kun kun bhaashaa paDhaainchha ?
3. yahãã rusi bhaashaa pani paDhaainchha ?
4. hindi ni ?
5. yahãã basne keTaakeTilaai kasto khaanaa dinchha ?
6. iskulmaa harek haptaa ke garinchha ?
7. yo iskul kun kun mahinaamaa banda garinchha ?
8. kastaa bidyaarthiharulaai sajaaya diinchha ?
9. yo iskulko anushaashan kasto chha ?

Grammar Notes

1. **'paDhaainchha', 'garinchha', 'sikaainchha'** are the passive froms of the verb **'paDhaaunu,' garnu'** and **'sikaaunu'**. In Nepali most verbs are frequently used in the passive form.

LESSON 37

VOCABULARY

anekaũ	several	krishi	agriculture
		laakh	one hundred thousand
byawasthaa	system	peshaa	occupation
chhetra	region, area	pratisat	percent
janasankhyaa	population	raajmaarga	Highway
karoD	ten million	yaataayaat	transportation

sri pããch mahaaraajaadhiraaj –His Majesty the King.

PART I

1. nepaalko janasankhyaa kati chha ?	What is the population of Nepal ?
ek karoD dash laakh.	Eleven million.
2. dherai jaso nepaaliharuko pesaa ke ho ?	What is the occupation of most Nepalese ?
krishi.	Agriculture.
3. kati pratishat nepaliharu saakchhyar chhan ?	What percentage of the Nepalese are literate ?
unnais pratishat.	Nineteen percent.
4. nepaalmaa yaataayaatko byawasthaa kasto chha ni ?	What is the transportation system like in Nepal ?
euTaa purba pashchim raajmaarg chha. pahaaDi chhetrakaa anekaũ Thaaũharumaa hawaai jahaajbaaTa panı pugna sakincha.	There is an east-west High way. Also several places in the mountainous regions can be reached by aeroplanes.
5. yahããkaa maanisharu kun kun dharma maanchhan ni ?	Which religions do the people of Nepal follow ?
hiıdu ra bauddha dharma.	Hinduism and Buddhism.

6. nepaalkaa shri paach maahaa-raajaadhiraajko naam ke ho ?	What is the name of His Majesty the King of Nepal ?
birendra bir bikram shaha dev.	Birendra Bir Bikram Shah Dev.

PART II

(a)

1. maaiklaai bheTnu bhayo ta ?	Did you see Mike ?
bheTẽ.	Yes, I did.
2. ke bhannu bhayo ta ?	What did you tell him ?
bholi aaunu holaa bhanera bhane.	I told him to come tomorrow.
3. usle ke bhanyo ta ?	What did he say ?
aauchhu bhanera bhanyo.	He said that he would come.

(b)

1. bholikolaagi TikaT lyaaunu bhayo ta ?	Did you get the ticket for tomorrow ?
lyaaina.	No, I didn't.
2. kina ta ?	Why not ?
TikaT chhaina bhanera bhanyo.	He said that there weren't any tickets
3. parsikolaagi lyaannu bhaena ta?	Didn't you buy one for the day after tomorrow ?
parsikolaagi bholi aaunus bhanera bhanyo.	He told me to come tomorrow for the day after tomorrow.

(c)

1. DaakTarkãã gayau ta ?	Did you go to the Doctor's ?
gaẽ.	Yes, I did.

2. ke bhanyo ta ?	What did he say ?
peTmaa jukaa parekochha bhanera bhanyo.	He said that I have worms.
3. ausadhi diyo ta ?	Did he give you any medicine ?
diena.	No, he didn't.
4. kina ni ?	Why not ?
bholi aaunus bhanyo.	He said that I should go tomorrow.

COMPREHENSION

hijo maaikle makahãã aaũchhu bhanera bhaneko thiyo. dinbhari uslaai maile parkhẽ. u naaaekole aaja bihaana usko Deraamaa gaẽ. u suti raheko rahechha. hijo kina aaunu bhaena bhanera maile uslaai sodhe. usle peT dukhera aauna sakina bhanera bhanyo. bholi aaunuhunchhu ta bhani maile soddha sancho bhayo bhane aaulaa bhanera bhanyo. uslaai DaakTarle paani sãdhai umaalera khaana bhaneko thiyo re. tara usko isTov bigrera paani umaalna napaaekole tyasai khaaechha. naumaaleko paani khaaeko hunaale usko peTmaa jukaa paryo holaa, tysaile ta usko peT dukheko chha.

QUESTIONS

1. maaikle ke bhaneko thiyo ?
2. dinbhari tapaaĩle kaslaai parkhanubhayo ?
3. aaja kina usko Deraamaa jaanubhayo ?
4. u ke gariraheko rahechha ?
5. tapaaĩle uslaai ke bhannu bhayo ?
6. usle ke bhanyo ?
7. ani tapaaĩle ke sodhunubhayo ?
8. usle ke bhanyo ta ?
9. uslaai DaakTarle ke bhaneko thiyo re ?
10. usle paani kina umaalena ?
11. usko peTmaa ke bhayo holaa ?
12. usko peT kina duhheko chha ?
13. tapaaĩ pani naumaaleko paani khaanuhunchha ?

Grammar Notes

Reported Speech

When we report someone's speech to someone else we call it "Reported speech". You know that the particle **'re'** is used in the this way and is very common in spoken Nepali but is not much used in written Nepali.

There is one other form of "Reported Speech" which is common both in written and in spoken Nepali. In this form the actual words of the speaker are quoted, and the tense of the verb is not changed. Some change is made, however, in the person of the pronoun and the verb, and the word **'bhanera'** is used to the end of the words quoted. Here are some examples.

Statement:

A) Direct– ma paalpaa jaanna.	I won't go to Palpa.
B) Indirect– usle paalpaa jaanna (bhanera) bhanyo.	He said that he would not go to Palpa.
usle paalpaa jaanna bhanera malaai bhanyo.	He told me that he would not go to Palpa.

In the first sentence the word **'bhanera'** is optional but in the second one it is necessary.

Command

Direct: bholi aau.	Come tomorrow.
Indirect: usle bholi aau (bhanera) bhanyo	He said that I should come tomorrow.
usle bholi aau bhanera malaai bhanyo.	He told me to come tomorrow.

Question

Direct : timi basne ghar yahi ho ?
Indirect : usle timi basne ghar yahi ho bhanera sodhyo.

Note that in the following sentences **'bhanera'** (lit. ; having said) is not a sign of Indirect Speech.

timi aauchhau bhanera ma aaeko.	I came because (I knew that) you were coming.
raam pahilaa hunchha bhanera sabaile anumaan garekaa thie.	Everybody had guessed that Ram would be first (in the exam).

FUTURE TENSE

Although simple present tense– ma jaanchhu – etc. is often used for future indefinite tense, there are two other future indefinite forms in use and should be learnt.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL

The 'laa' form is sometimes used with references to future action. It is called Future Conditional.

Examples:

ma bholi aaulaa, ahile jaanchhu.	I'll come tomorrow, but I am leaving now.
kitaab paDhisakepachhi tapaaĩlaai diũlaa.	I'll give this book to you after I finish reading it.
baabulaai hernus khaaT baaTa laDlaa.	Please look at the baby. It'll fall off from the cot.
haamiharu kati baje taansen pugaũlaa ?	What time will we arrive at Tansen ?
aaja raati paani parlaa jasto chha.	Looks like it'll rain tonight.
mohan yo paTak paas hola ta ?	Do you think Mohan will pass this year ?
yo baabu kahile hiDna sakne holaa?	When will this baby be able to walk ?

uniharu aaudainan jasto ta malaai laagdaina. naparkhaa bho.	I don't think they'll come. Let us not wait.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL TENSE.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	
ma	jaaũlaa	jaawaina	I'll go / I won't go.
tã	jaalaas	jawainas	You'll go/You won't go.
u	jaalaa	jaawaina	He'll go/He won't go.
haami(haru)	jaawaulaa	jaawainau	We'll go/We won't go.
timi (haru)	jaaulaa	jaawainau	You'll go/You won't go.
uniharu	jaalaan	jawaainan	They'll go/They won't go.
tapaai (haru)	jaanuholaa	jaanu hawaina	You'll go/You won't go.

FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

The **'nechhu'** form is used in formal written Nepali, Radio broadcasts and newspapers.

Examples:

1. "bholi aparaanha kaaThamaanDu upatyakaamaa paani parnechha.	"It'll rain in the Kathmandu Valley tomorrow afternoon". (weather forecast over Radio Nepal)
2. "pardhaan mantrile bholi nai bhaaratiya netaaharusanga kuraakaani garnu hhunechha".	"The premier will hold talks with Indian leaders tomorrow". (news item in the **Gorakhapatra**)
3. "mero chhoro profesar hunechan ani ma hunechhu profesarsaahebko baakbu".	"My son will be a professor and I'll be the father of the professor". (from a novel)

In spoken Nepali, too, this form is used if the speaker is making an assertion, a promise a threat or a prophecy.

Examples:

ma timilaai sakdo maddat dinechhu	I'll give you all possible help.

haami dui ghanTaa pachhi aaunechhaũ. timi Thik paarera basa.	We'll come after two hours. Get ready.
yo kaam aaja sakenau bhane timilaai ma paisaa dine chhaina.	I won't pay you if you don't fisnish this work today.
yasari juwaa khelna thaalyo bhane, timi chhiTai kangaal hunechhau.	If you go on gambling like this, you will be a bankrupt soon.
bhaneko maana, natra pachhi dukkha paaunechhau.	Listen to what I'm saying, otherwise you'll suffer later.

Future Indefinite Tense

PRONOUN:	AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVES	
ma	jaanechhu	jaanechhaina	I'll go/I won't go.
tã	jaanechhas	jaanechhainas	You'll go/You won't
u	jaanechha	jaanchhaina	He'll go/He wont't go.
hami (haru)	jaanechhaũ	jaanechhainaũ	We'll go/We won't
timi (haru)	jaanechhau	jaanechhainau	You'll go/You won't go.
uniharu	jaanechhan	jaanechhainan	They'll go/They won't go.
tapaaI (haru)	jaanuhunechha	jaanuhunechhaina	You'll go/You won't go.

LESSON 38

VOCABULARY

mantraalaya	—	ministry
sachib	—	secretary
sikchhyaa	—	education

(a)

1. hijo tapaaĩle kati baje bhaat khaanu bho ?	What time did you eat yesterday ?
paune dash baje khaaẽ.	I ate at quarter to ten.
2. khaane bittikai ke garnu bhayo?	What did you do immediately after eating ?
khaane bittikai iskul gaẽ.	I went to school right after eating.
3. iskulmaa pugdaa kati bajeko thiyo ?	What time was it when you arrived at school ?
dash baji sakeko thiyo.	It was past ten O'clock.
4. iskulmaa pugne bittikai ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do immediately after arriving at school ?
iskulmaa pugne bittikati klaasmaa gaẽ.	I went io class right after arriving at aschool.

(b)

1. hijo diũso ke garnubhayo ?	What did you do yesterday afternoon ?
paaTan gaeko thiẽ.	I went to Patan.
2. kina ?	Why ?
sinemaa herne bichaar thiyo.	I wanted to see the movie.

3. hernubhayo ta ? naherikana pharkẽ.	Did you see it ? I came back without seeing it.
4. kin ta ? bhiD rahechha, tyas kaaran tikaT paaiena.	Why ? It was crowded so tickets were not available.

(c)

1. hijo dinbhari kahãã jaanubhaeko thiyo ? sikchhyaa mantraalayamaa gaeko thiẽ.	Where were you the whole day yesterday ? I was at the Ministry of Education.
2. ke kaam thiyo ra ? sachibjyulaai bheTne kaam thiyo.	What did you have to do there ? I had to see the Secretary.
3. bheT bhayo ta ? bhet ta bhayo tara chaar baje	Did you see him ? I saw him but only at four O'clock.
4. wahãã naaaunjel ke garnubhayo ta ? wahãã naaunjel gaph garera basẽ.	What did you do until he came ? I sat and talked until he came.

Grammar Notes

1. /na khaaikana/etc.

Without eating, without seeing, without asking etc. This form is made by/na/ the root of the verb /ikana/. Study the following phrases along with their root verbs.

nuhaaunu	nanuhaaikana
paDhnu	napaDhikana
dinu	nadiikana

hããsnu	nahããsikana
umaalnu	naumaalikana
garnu	nagarikana
bolnu	nabolikana
kinnu	nakinikana
leknnu	nalekhikana

The following are made in a lishgly different way.

hunu	nabhaikana
dhunu	nadhoikana
jaanu	nagaikana

2. **ne-bittikai** } *as soon as*
naa-sath }

u aaune bittikai tapaaiLaai khabar garchhu. — I'll let you know as soon as he comes.

bhaat paaknaasaath malaai bhana. — Let me know as soon as the food is ready.

na { **naaaunjel** / **naaaesamma** } *until*

Both of these forms are used.

maaik naaunjel maile uslaai parkhẽ. I waited for Mike until he came back.

tapaaĩ khaaunjel ma parkhanchhu. I'll wait until you eat.

Paropakaar, it means benevolence, charity, kindness. Here–name of a school.

raastriya rangashaalaa — The national stadium.

hurukka hunu (garnu)– *Lit to be at the point of death.* Figuratively this means to be really crazy about something.

Compound Verbs

dash baji sakeko thiyo. — It was past ten O'clock.

u gaisakyo.	He has already gone.
ma lyaaidiũlaa.	I'll bring for you.

In the above examples 'baji sakeko', 'gaisakyo' and 'lyaaidiũlaa' are compound verbs because they are formed by two different verbs. Below are given some compound verbs with examples.

1. verb dinu

maile uslaai timro khabar bhanidiẽ	I gave him your message.
usko chiTThi lekhidiyau ta ?	Did you write the letter for him ?

2. verb parnu

malaai aajai ajaanuparchha.	I have to go today.
rughaa laagyo bhane aaraam garnuparchha.	You should rest when you have cold.

3. verb haalnu

ma gaihaalchhu.	I am leaving right now.

This verb form is used to show immediately.

4. verb saknu

uniharu gaisake.	They have already left.
usle kaam paaisakyo.	He has already found a job.
timile yo kitaab paDhisakyau ?	Have you finished reading this book ?

LESSION 37

VOCABULARY

bes	good	oraalo	downhill
bich	middle	ras	juice
chheu	side	taamaang	Tamang
lagiraakhnu	bring along	tirthasthaan	holy place
naumaaleko	unboiled	ukaalo	uphill

(a)

1. dui haptaa aghi tapaaĩ kahãã jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   dui haptaa aghi ma pokharaa gaeko thiẽ
   Where did you go two weeks ago?
   I went to Pokhara.
2. pokharaa kasto rahechha ?
   What did you think of Pokhara ?
   pokharaa nikaai raamro rahechha. I though it was very beautiful.
3. phewaa taaltira pani jaanu bhayo ?
   ho, gaẽ.
   Did you go to Phewa lake also ?
   Yes, I did.
4. tyahãã ke ke rahechha ?
   taalkochheumaa dherai res-Turaaharu ra bichmaa euTaa mandir rahechha.
   What did you see there ?
   I saw lots of restaurants beside the lake and a temple in the middle.
5. taalmaa pauDi pani khelnu bhyao ki ?
   pauDi ta khelina.
   Did you also swim in the lake ?
   No, I didn't.

(b)

1. hijo beluki kun resTuraamaa khaanaa khaanu bhayo ?
   ommaa.
   Where did you eat yesterday evening ?
   At the Om.

2. tyahãã kasto khaanaa paaine rahechha ?	What kind of food is available there ?
tibbati ra inDiyan.	Tibetan and Indian.
3. piune kuraa ke ke paine rahechha	What is available to drink ?
biyar, koko kolaa ra phalphul ko ras paaine rahechha.	Beer, Coke and fruit juice.
4. resTuraa kasto laagyo ta ? khaanaa ta miTho tara Thaaũ bhane ali phohor rahechha.	What do you think of the restuarant The food was good but the place seemed a bit dirty to me.

(c)

1. bihaana kahãã gaekaa thiyau ?	Where were you this morning ?
saathiko gaharmaa.	At my friend's house.
2. saathisanaga bheT bhayo ?	Did you see your friend ?
ahã, DaakTarkomaa gaechha.	No, he had already gone to the docror's.
3. kina ra ? ke bhaechha ?	Why ? What happened to him ?
hijodekhi usko peT dukhechha	His stomach has been hurting since yesterday.
4. kasari peT duhhe chha ?	How come his stomach hurts ?
saathiko gharmaa bhoj khaana gaechha ra naumaaleko paani khaaechha.	He went to his friend's house and drank unboiled water.

COMPREHENSION:

gaeko mahinaa ma ra meraa tin saathiharu gosaaikunDatira ghumna gaekaa thiyaũ. yo nepaalko euTaa tirthasthaan ho. gosaaikundDa jaana ra aauna jammaa dui haptaa laagdo rahechha. yoThaaũ karib panDhra hajaar phiT mathi euTaa ramaailo Thaaũmaa rahechha. tyahãã jaana dherai ukaalo oraalo pardo rahechha. baaTomaa dherai

jaso taamaang gaaũ rahechhan. taamaang bhaepani uniharu nepaali boldaa rahechhan. baaToko kunai kunai gaaumaa khaanaa paaido rahechha, kunaimaa napaaine rahechha. tyasaile kehi khaanaa lagi rakhnu bes hũdo rahechha.

QUESTIONS:–

1. gaeko mahinaa ma ra meraa saathiharu kahãã gaekaa thiyaũ ?
2. tyahãã jaana aauna kati laagdo rahechha ?
3. yo Thaaũ kati hajaar PhiT maathi rahechha ?
4. kasto Thaaumaa rahechha ?
5. tyahãã jaane baaTo kasto rahechha ?
6. baaTomaa kun gaaũ pardo rahechha ?
7. taamaang bhaepani uniharu kun bhaashaa boldaa rahechhan ?
8. baaToko gaaumaa khaana paaine rahechha ?
7. ke garnu bes hũdo rahechha ?
10. tapaaĩ gosaaikundDa jaanu bhaeko chha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. See lesson 25 for the use of **'rahechha'**
2. In the following examples or in the sentences in the above lesson **'bhane'** means 'as for

kaaThmaanDumaa tarkaari sasto rahechha tara maasu bhane dherai mahago rahechha.	I found that in Kathmandu vegetables are cheap, as for meat, it's very expensive.
ma khasiko maasu khaanchu. kukhuraako bhane khaanna.	I eat goat meat. As for chichen meat, I don't eat it.

Unknown Past

taam DaakTarkomaa gaechha	This implies that the fact that Tam had gone to the doctor's has just been known to the speaker. This tense form is known

as Unknown Past and is very common in Nepali, like 'rahechha'.

Study the following examples:

hijo raati paani parechha.	I see that it rained last night.
u ta hijai pokharaa gaechha.	I found out just now that he left for Pokhara yesterday.
biraalole sabai dudh khaaechha.	Oh. look! The cat drank all the milk.
tarkaari piro bhaechha.	I find the vegetables hot.
DaaDaamaa hiu parechha.	I see that it snowed over the hill.
timi ta assadhyai dublaaechhau.	I notice that you have become very thin.
suneu ! raamko bahiniko bihe bhaechha.	Did you hear that Ram's sister got married ?
bil ta amerikaa pharkechha.	I have just heard that Bill returned to the States.
kina, ke bhaechha ?	Why, what happened ?
usko baa bitnu bhaechha.	I hear that his father died.

LESSON 40

VOCABULARY

abasya	for sure, certainly	mihenat garnu	to work hard
abelaa	late	milansaar	frendly
baani	habit	paThaaunu	to send
khojnu	to look for	patra	letter
khusi paarnu	to please	rojnu	to choose
maagnu	to ask for	saruwaa	transfer

(a)

1. timi nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?
   tin mahinaa jati bhayo.
   How long has it been since you came to Nepal ?
   About three months.

2. timile kina nepaalmaa aauna rojyau ?
   nepaal raamro chha bhanera sunekole.
   Why did you choose to come to Nepal ?
   Because I'd heard that Nepal is beautiful.

3. tapaaIlaai koriyaamaa paThaaeko bhae jaanu hunthyo ?
   malaai koriyaamaa paThaaeko bhae jaannathẽ.
   Would you have gone if they had sent you to Korea ?
   No, if they had sent me to Korea, I wouldn't have gone.

4. kina ?
   koriyen bhaashaa sikna garho hunchha bhanne sunekole.
   Why ?
   Because I've heard that it's difficult to learn Korean.

5. phijimaa paThaaeko bhae ni ?
   tyahãã paThaaeko bhae ta jaanthe.
   What if they had sent you to Fiji ?
   I would have gone if they had sent me there.

1. jimji, tapaaĩlaai tapaaĩko gaaũ kasto laagyo ?	Hi Jim ! How do you like your village ?
malaai mero gaaũ asaadhyai man paryo.	I like my village very much.
2. tyahããkaa maanchheharu ni ?	How about the people there ?
uniharu pani ekdam milansaar rahechhan.	I found them also very friendly.
3. uniharu milansaar nabhaeko bhae tapaaĩ ke garnu hunthyo ?	What would you have done if they weren't friendly ?
ma raamro kaam garera uniharulaai khusi paarna koshis garthẽ.	I would have tried to please them by working well.
4. tyahãã kunai kaam nai nabhaeko bhae ?	How about if there wasn't any thing to do ?
mero aphismaa saruwaa maagi patra lekhthẽ.	I would have written to my office asking for a transfer.

COMPREHENSION :-

(a) hijo sinemaa herna bhanera ma sinemaa hallmaa gae. tara shanibaar bhaekole asaadhyai bhiD rahechha, TikaT paaiena. 'black' maa khojeko bhae ki bihaanai gaeko bhae paainthyo hola. malaai 'black' maa TikaT lina man laagena. tyasaile sinemaa naherikanai pharkẽ.

QUESTIONS :-

1 hijo kahãã jaanu bhayo ?
2. kina ?
3 TikaT paaiyo ta ?

4. kina paaiyena ?
5. bihaanai gaeko bhae paainthyo ?
6 'black' maa kineko bhae ni ?
7. tapaalle 'black' maa linu bhayo ta ?
8. sinemaa naherikanai pharkanu bhayo ?

(b) raambahadurko jããch arko haptaadekhi shuru hunchha. jããch najikai aaekole u aaja bholi dinbhari ra raati pani abelaa samma paDhchha. pahiledekhi usle raamrosanga paDheko bhae ahile uslaai yeti dherai mihenat garnu pardainathyo. tara ke garne ? raambahaadurko baani yastai chha. pohor saal u phel bhayo. iskulmaa dindinai gaeko bhae ra guruharule paDhaaeko sabai paTh raamro sanga paDheko bhae u phel hunnathyo, abasya pass hunthyo.

QUESTIONS:-

1. raam bahaadurko jããch kahile dekhi suru hunchha ?
2. u aaja bholi kina dherai mihenat garchha ?
3. pahile dekhi raamrosanga paDheko bhae uslaai ahile yeti dherai mihenat garnu parthyo ?
4. pohor saal u paass bhayo ki phel bhayo ?
5. ke gareko bahae u phhor saal pass hunthyo ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The '...**ekobhae**' is a conditional structure indicating that the likelihood of the condition being fulfilled is impossible.

Examples:

masanga paisaa bhaeko bhae dherai saamaan kinthẽ. — If I had money I would have bought a lot of things.

(I didn't have money so I didn't but many things.)

or

(I wish I could buy things but I don't have any money)

2. 'sinemaa herna bhanera'. Note the use of **'bhanera'**, It does not mean anything here. One can simply say **'sinemaa herna'.**

Some Nepali Idioms

haawaa birgranu – to go crazy
usko haawaa bigreko chha – He has gone crazy.
hawaa khuskanu – to go crazy
chitta bujhnu – to be satisfied
chitta dukhnu – (of feelings) to be hurt
ããkhaa chhalnu – to deceive

ããkhaa chimlanu – 1. to be indifferent
2. to die
3. to ponder
4 not to think of the result

arti dinu – to advise
baadhaa dinu – to distrurb
chhori dinu – to give one's daughter, ie. in marriage
Dhog dinu to salute
dos dinu – to blame
dukkha dinu – to pester
ishsaaraa dinu – to hint
ããkhaamaa haale pani na bijhaaunu – to be an extremely nice person
dikka garnu – to bother
hel chakryaaī garnu – to neglect
hit garnu – to do good
khissi garnu – to ridicule
sekhi garnu – to boast
sriganesh garnu – to start

haat haalnu 1. to meddle in
2. to undertake

baaTo hernu – to wait
haat hernu – to read hand (palm)
dikka hunu to be fed up

ek mukh hunu – to unite

naak jaanu – to be disgraced
paramdhaam jaanu – to die

aDkal kaaTnu – to guess
din kaaTnu – to spend time
dukkha kaaTnu – to suffer
kuraa kaaTnu – to interrupt, to refuse

Taap kasnu – to run away

aalu khaanu – to fail
ghus khaanu – to take bribe
gotaa khaanu – to suffer
haawaa khaanu – to fail, to pass away.
kiriyaa khaanu – to swear
kuraa khaanu – to agree
silTimur hhaanu – to die

khoiro khannu – to harass

bhed kholnu – to disclose

naak khumchyaaunu – to be unsatisfied

haat laagnu – to fall into one's hands

mukh laagnu – to answer back impudently
pachhi laagnu – to follow
udass laagnu – to be depressed
ããkhaa laagnu – to caste eyes upon

adhyaaro mukh laaunu – to look unhappy
chitta laaunu – to attend to
pattaa laaunu – to find out, discover
dhaak laaunu – to brag
kuraa laaunu – to tell tales
naali beli laaunu – to furnish details
ThaaDo ghããTi laaunu – to drink alcoholic liquor

haat lamkaaunu – to steal

mekh maarnu – to defeat, to bring to one's senses

haat paarnu – to gain possession of
chaal paaunu – to come to know
chet paaunu – to become wise

chhoro paaunu to give birth to a son

bhar parnu – to depend

chiso pasnu – to suspect

taalumaa aalu phalnu – to have huge benefits without doing much

mukh pharkaaunu – to answer back insolently

mukh phulaaunu – to be angry

ris phernu – to avenge

sekhi puryaaidinu – to give the devil his due

kaan samaatnu – to take a solemn oath not to do something

mukh samhaalnu – to be careful in what one is saying

mukh siunu – to be quiet

khuTTa taannu – to die

kulelam Thoknu – to run away

aakaasko phal – an impossibility

gobar ganesh – stupid fellow, imbecile

Adverbial Expressions :

1. nithrukka bhijnu — to be wet through and through
2. bhusukka birsanu — to forget completely
3. ghuTukka nilnu — to swallow with a gulp
4. jhanakka risaaunu — to get furiously angry; to lose one's temper
5. Tuplukka aaipugnu — to come unexpectedly; to come at the right moment
6. Thasakaa parnu — to be proud; to be unwilling
7. khutrukka marnu — to die instantly
8. jhasanga jhaskanu — to be startled
7. musukka hããsnu — to smile
10. pulukka hernu — to look askance; to look coyly at
11. chasakka chaskanu — to have a sharp pain
12. jurukka uThnu — to rise smartly
13. thapakka raakhnu — to put quietly
14. paTakka nabolnu — not to speak at all
15. dhapakka balnu — to blaze up
16. hurkukka hunu — to be extremely desirous of
17. phurukka parnu — to be delighted
18. talakka Talkanu — to shine brightly
17. pharakka pharkanu — to turn abruptly
20. jhaDanga risaaunu — to lose one's temper
21. chharlanga dekhinu — to be seen clearly
22. gamakka parnu — to feel self-sufficient
23. TuluTulu hernu — to look fixedly
24. chaTakka chhoDnu — to give up something abruptly
25. kapaakap khaanu — to swallow right down
26. akamakka parnu — to be dumbfounded

27. dhuru dhuru runu — to weep profusely
28. dhurukka ruwaaunu — to be a source of great trouble
29. laryaang lurung garnu— to saunter, loiter
30. khuru khuru garnu — to do steadily
31. suTukka bhannu — to tell secretly
32. Thikka parnu — to get ready
33 Thikka paarnu — to make ready

Common Proverbs

chaltikaa ukhaanharu

1. raato raamro, guliyo miTho.
   Red is beautiful, sweet is delicious.
2. manako baha kasailai nakaha.
   Do not publish your troubles.
3. agulTole haaneko kukur bijuli chamkadaa tarsanchha.
   A dog struck by brand trembles at a flash of lightening.
4. hatpatko kaam latpat.
   A work done in a hurry ends in disarray.
5. murkhadekhi daiba pani Daraaũchha.
   Even a God is afraid of the fool.
6. waraalo laageko baaghlaai baachhaale pani khedchha.
   A run down tiger is chased even by a calf.
7. khaane mukhaai jungaale chhekdaina.
   The moustache does not stop the mouth eating.
8. jastaalaai tastai DhīDolaai nistai.
   Tit for tat.
9. siyo chornele bhiTTaa phorchha.
   He who steals a needle will break open a wall.
10. maagnelaaai taato bhaat.
    A beggar should not be a chooser.
11. bããdarko haatmaa nariwal.
    A coconut in a monkey's hand.
12. kaaTeko ghaaumaa nun chuk.
    Adding insult to injury.
13. bhaagyamaa bhae goru pani byaaũchha.
    If you are lucky, even your ox will give birth.
14. haattiko mukhmaa jiraa.
    A drop in the ocean.
15. naachna jaandaina aagan TeDho.
    A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.

16. hagi sakyo baaTo dekhyo.
    After death the doctor.
17. mukhmaa raam raam bagalimaa chhuraa.
    A honey tongue a heart of a gall.
18. jasto ropyo ustai phalchha.
    As you sow so you reap.
19. bheDaa bheDaasanga baakhraa baakhraasanga.
    Birds of the same feather flock together.
20. sautaako risle poiko kaakhmaa mutne.
    Burn one's house to frighten away the mice.
21. chhoro paaune kahile kahile bhoTo siune ahile.
    Counting the chickens before they are hatched.
22. ghããTi heri haaD nilnu.
    Cut your coat according to your cloth.
23. des gunako bhes kapaal gunako kesh.
    Do in Rome as the Romans do.
24. chhan geDi sabai meri chhainan geDi sabai Tedhi.
    Fair weather friends.
25. mareko baaghko junghaa taanne.
    Flogging a dead horse.
26. aũlo dīdaa Dudulno nilne
    Give him an inch and he will ask for a mile.
27. aaphu bhalo ta jagat bhalo.
    Good mind good find.
28. nahunu bhandaa kaano maamaa niko.
    Something is better than nothing.
29. paanimaa basi ghohi saga bairabhaab.
    It is hard to live in Rome and strife with Pope.
30. jasto boT ustai phal.
    Like father like son.
31. ma taakchhu muDho bancharo taakchha ghũDo.
    Man proposes God disposes.
32. jasko sakti usko bhakti.
    Might is right.

33. achaanoko pir khukurile haandaina.
No one knows the weight of another's burden.

24. aaphno aangko bhaisi nadekhne, arkaako aangko jumraa dekhne.
No one looks to his own fault.

35. ek dinko paahuna miTho miTho khaa, dui dinko paahunaa jaso taso khaa, tin dinko paahunaa jataa sukai jaa.
One day a guest, two days a guest, three days a pest.

36. kasaiko boli kasaiko gaali.
One man's meat is another man's poison.

37. lobhale laabh laabhle bilaap.
Penny wise and pound foolish.

38. maukaa aaũchha parkhadaina.
Time and tide wait for no man.

39. ek pantha do kaaj.
To kill two birds with one stone.

40. dherai khaae ghiu pani amilo hunchha.
Too much of anything is bad.

41. iswar daahinaa bhae kasko ke laagchha.
When God is kind all are favorable.

42. saas hunjel aas.
While there is life thre is hope.

43. maamaaki ghoDi meri hi hi.
To be proud of another's property.

Glossary

Below is a list of works used in this book. The number in brackets refer to the lesson in which the word first appears.

(a)

aaitabaar (11)	sunday	aaja (4)	today
ããkhaa (12)	eye	aalu (8)	potato
aamaa (2)	mother	ããp (6)	mango
aaphno (3)	own	aaraam garnu (10)	to rest
aaune (11)	coming, next	aaunu (3)	to come
aba (7)	now	aDhaai(20)	two and half
agaaDi (10)	in front of	aghi (7)	since, ago
aglaa, aglo 1(2)	tall	alchhi (10)	lazy
aliali (6)	a little, a few	amilo (2)	sour
anchal (18)	zone	anDaa (13)	egg
anekaũ (37)	several	ani (4)	and then
anushaashan (36)	discipline	assadhyai (10)	extremely
asanTol (5)	asanTole (street in Kathmandu)	asti (11)	day before yesterday
atyanta (34)	very much	audhi (32)	extremely
ausadhi (10)	medicine		

(b)

baa (2)	father	bahini (3)	younger sister
baahira (3)	out, outside	bazaar (4)	market
baalnu (7)	to light	bajai (17)	grand nmother
bheTnu (23)	to meet	baje (4)	O'clock (stating /asking time of an event)
baaremaa (28)	about		
baas (32)	shelter		
baaTa (4)	from	bajyo (8)	O'clock

baaTo road, path, trail
bachchha (18) chi'd, young ones
baDhi (27) more, better
badmaas (26) mischiveous
bahaal (21) rent
baTTaa (5) packet
batti light, lamp
bechnu (27) to sell
bekaar (27) jobless
belaayat (16) England
belukaa (4) evening
bhaaDaa (28) rent
bhaai (3) younger brother
bhaansaa garnu (253) to eat a meal
bhaashaa (8) language
bhaat (17) cooked rice
bhayo became
bhiD (27) crowd
bhitra (3) in, inside
bhoklaagnu (10) to feel hungry
bhoj (25) feast
bholi (4) tomorrow
bihaana (4) morning
bhuraa (25) fingerlings
baliyo (27) strong
banaaunu (22) to make
banda garnu (2) to close, to shut
baneko (13) made
barsha (13) year
bas (7) bus
bidaa (4) holiday
bidesi (27) foreigner
bidyaarthi (0) student
bihaa (13) marriage, wedding
bihaanako khaanaa (8) morning meal
bihibaar (11) Thursday
bigranu to be broken
bigyaan (26) science
bish (35) poison
bisaya (27) subject
biu seed
bokaa (25) uncastrated male goat
bolnu (8) to speak
budhabaar (11) Wednesday
byabahaar (26) treatment
byawasthaa (37) system

(c)

chaaD (25) festival
chaahĩdaina (6) is not needed
chaalis (7) forty
chããhi (3) one (specified)
chaamal (4) uncooked rice
charpi (21) latrine
chaa (1) is
chaaina (2) is not
chhan (3) are
chharlangai (25) clearly

chaar (3) four
chaDhnu (24) to climb
chakki (18) tablet
chalaaunu (22) to drive
charaa (12) bird
chamchhaa (16) spoon
chhoTo (12) short (opp. of long)
chhuTTi (24) vacation
chiDiyaa khaanaa (20) zoo
chij (5) cheese
chin (18) China
chini (3) sugar
chhetra (37) region, area
chheu (32) side
chhiTo (21) fast, early
chhoDidinu to leave
chhoraa (13) son
chhori daughter
chiniyaa (17) Chinese
chinnu (23) to know, to recoginze
chiso cold
chiTThi (7) letter
chiyaa (2) tea
churoT (5) cigarette

(d)

daai (3) brother (older)
DaakTar (23) doctor
daal bhaat (4) lentils and cooked rice
dãāyaa (12) right (opp. to left)
dahi (17) yogurt
dakchhin (18) south
Dar laagnu (24) to be afraid
das (4) ten
dasãāi (25) Durga puja festival
Dat pen (6) ball point pen
DeDh (20) one and half
dekhi (6) from
dekhaaunu (23) to show
dekhinu (24) to be seen
dekhnu (8) to see
dherai jaso (7) mostly, usually
Dhilo (21) slow, late
Dhokaa (2) door
dhumdhaam (10) intensively pompously
dhunu (22) to wash
dikka laagnu (27) to feel sad
din (7) day
din bhari (17) day long
dinu (10) to give
disaa (10) stool
disaa laagnu to have diarrhoea
diũso (4) day time (afternoon)
dublo (21) thin, slim
dubai (14) both
dudh (4) milk
dui (3) two

Deraa (4) apartment
desh (18) country
dhaaro (21) water tap
dharma (25) religion
dherai (6) many, a lot of
dukhnu (10) to ache, to have to pain.
durgaa (25) one of the Hindu Goddesses.

(e)

ek (3) one
ek chhin (22) a moment, a while.
ekdam (14) very much
ekai (21) same
eklai (10) alone
ek paTak (23) once

(g)

gaai (12) cow
gããjaa (27) marijuana
gaarho (20) difficult
gaarho laagnu (3) to find difficult
gaaũ (7) village
gaeko (33) last (as in past)
gaiDaa (6) a brand of cigarette (lit. rhinoceros
galaichaa (13) carpet
garmi (21) hot
garnu (1) to do
gate (17) date
ghaDi (7) watch
ghanTaa (8) hour
ghanTaagar Clock-Tower
ghar (1) home, house
ghoDe jaatraa (10) horse racing ceremony
ghumnu (24) to roam around

(h)

haami (7) we
haat (19) hand
hajaaraũ (30) thousands
hijo (0) yesterday
hocho (12) short (as opp. to tall)

hajur (1) yes (Polite)
haraaunu (24) to lose
harek (30) every
haptaa (7) week
hawaaipatra (30) aerogram
hernu (7) to look
ho (1) is (definitive)
hlDera (18) on foot
himaal (14) mountain (snow peak)
hoina (1) isn't (definitive)
holaa (4) may be, might be
hū (15) am
hun (3) are

(i)

itihaas (27) history

(j)

jaannu (14) to know
jaanu (3) to go
jammaa (5) total
janasankhyaa (37) population
jangali (35) wild
jaslaai pani (32) to any one
jasto (21) like
jati (18) about
jattikai (21) like (that)
jhanDai (14) almost
jahile pani (32) always, all the time
jhiknu (17) to take out
jholaa (1) bag
jhyaal (3) window
jor (27) pair
jukaa (24) leech
jun pani (32) anything
jwaro (10) fever

(k)

kaagati (8) lemon
kaalo (1) black
kaam (7) work
kaam garnu (15) to work
kaapi (1) notebook
kalaatira (18) in what direction
katiwaTaa (3) how many
kattiko (29) how much
ke (1) what

kaarkhaanaa (13) factory
kâãTaa (19) fork
kaaryaalaya (36) office
kaaTnu (25) to cut
kahãã (1) where
kahile (7) when
kahile dekhi (7) how long, since when
kahile kahĩ (8) sometimes
kahile pani (15) never
kalam (1) pen
kamaaunu (22) to earn, to make money
kamij (1) shirt
kapaal (12) hair of the head
kaphi (4) coffe
karoD (37) ten millions
kasari (7) how
kasko (1) whose
kasto (1) what color
kina (4) why
kinaar (24) beach
kinabhane (25) because
kinmel garnu (22) to shop
kisaan (25) farmer
kisim (27) kind, type
kitaab (1) book
klaas (4) class
ko (3) who
ko ko (4) who (plural)
kehi any, something
keraa (7) banana
khaajaa (8) snack
khaali (22) empty, vacant
khaam (6) envelope
khaanaa (14) food, meal
khaanu (2) to eat, to drink
khairo (12) brown
khalti (3) pocket
khasi (26) goat
khel (14) game
khelnu (8) to play
khojnu (28) to look for
kholnu (1) to open
khub (24) very (emphatic)
khukuri (17) Gorkha knife
khusi paarnu (40) to please
khuTTaa (12) leg
ki (4) or
ko laagi (17) for
kohi (27) anybody, somebody
koThaa (11) room
krishi (37) agriculture
kukhuraa (20) chicken
kun (3) which
kunni (13) don't know
kyaalenDar (4) calendar

(l)

laakh (37) one hundred thousands
lekhnu (4) to write

		linu (2)	to take
laamo (12)	long	lugaa (17)	dress
		lyaaidinu (6)	to bring for someone
lagidinu (32)	to take for some one		
lagiraakhnu (37)	bring along		

(m)

ma (2)	I	maddat garnu (35)	to assist
maa (3)	at, in, on	madhye (27)	among, between
maachhaa (35)	fish	mahãgo (5)	expensive
maadhyamik biddyaalaya (35)	secondary school	mahinaa (8)	month
		maile	I (in past tense)
		malaai (2)	to me, for me
maagnu (40)	to ask for	mandir (20)	temple
maanabiki shaastra (36)	humanities	mangalbaar (11)	Tuesday
		manlaagnu (14)	to want
maanchhe (25)	man	man parnu (14)	to like
maannu (25)	to follow	mantraalaya (38)	ministry
maarnu (35)	to kill	matsya bikaas kendra– (35)	Fisheries Development Centre
maasu (8)	meat		
maatra (5)	only	majjaa (25)	fun
maddat	help, assistance	milansaar (40)	friendly
mausam (21)	weather	mineT (8)	minute
meraa	mine (plural)	miThaai (8)	sweets
mero (1)	my	mohar (5)	half a rupee
mihenat garnu (40)	to work hard		

(n)

naam (1)	name	nau (7)	nine
najaane (3)	will not go	naumaaleko (34)	unboiled
najik (18)	near	nayaã (17)	new

najikai (18) nearby
naksaa (18) map
namaste (1) hello, good bye, greeting
nambari (30) a hundred rupee note
napaDhne (4) will not read
naraakhne (4) will not put
ni (1) and how about
nibhaaunu (7) to turn off (light)
nikkai (24) very (emphatic)
niko hunu (34) to be well, to be cured
nira (3) near
nuhaaunu (22) to bathe
nyaano (27) warm

(o)

oraalo downhill

(p)

pããch (4) five
paainchha (5) is available
paakeT (6) packet
paalnu (35) to raise
paani (2) water
paani parnu (21) to rain
paaunu (7) to get
pashchim (18) west
pachchis (7) twenty five
pachhaaDi (18) behind
paDhaaunu (8) to teach
paDhnu (1) to read
pahilo (25) first
paisaa (6) pice
palTinu (32) to lie down
pandhraũ (25) fifteenth
pani (2) also
pharkaanu (22) to return something
parchha (6) it costs
pardaina neg. of parchha
pariwaar (13) family
parsi (11) day after tomorrow
pasal (4) store
paTak (18) times
paThaaunu to send
patra letter
patrikaa (27) newspaper
pauDi khelnu (23) to swim
paune (4) quarter to
paune saat quarter to seven
pesaa (37) occupation
peT (10) stomach
phalphul (5) fruit
pharak (21) different
pohor saal (24) last year
pokhari (35) pond

pharkanu (4) to return
pheri (8) again
phohor (7) dirty
phul (5) egg, flower
phursad (26) free time
phuT ball (4) foot ball
pisaab garnu (22) to urinate
prasiddha (24) famous
pratisat (37) percent
pugnu (16) to be enough
pugnu (27) to arrive
pujaa (25) worship
puraano (17) old
purba (18) east

(r)

ra (8) and
raaj maarga (37) high way
raajya (3) state
raakhnu (3) to put
raastriya (36) national
raato (3) red
rahar (35) desire
raksi (4) home made spirit
raksi laagnu (17) to get drunk
ramaailo (10) pleasant, scenic
ras (37) juice
rojnu (40) choose
roknu (27) to stop
roTi (11) bread
rusi (36) Russian

(s)

saaDhe (6) half (beyond one)
saaDhe das (4) half past ten
saat (4) seven
saaThi (20) sixty
saahuji (5) store keeper
saathi (4) friend
saaTi dinu (35) to change
saaTnu (15) to trade, to change
sabai (12) all
sabbhandaa (21) the most (superlative)
sae (21) hundred
sahar (3) town, city
sajaaya (36) punishment
sajilai (30) easily
saknu (30) to be able to
salaad (8) salad
samaaj saastra (30) sicology
samma (4) as far as, until
samudra (24) sea
sanchai (2) fine, well
sanga (15) with
sanibaar (11) Saturday

sachib (38) secretary
saDak (18) road
sadar mukaam (35) district centre
sadhaI (8) always
sarkaari (38) government (adj)
saruwaa (40) transfer
sattari (20) seventy
sawaa pããch quarter past five
saya (13) hundred
seto (1) white
siddhinu (26) to be finished
sikchhyak (33) teacher
sikchhyaal (38) education
siknu (7) to learn
sinemaa (4) movie
sanskrit (28) sanskrit
sanskriti (36) culture
saphaa (9) clean
sarkaari (23) official
sisaakalam (6) pencil
sisi (6) bottle
sukaaunu (35) to dry
sombaar (11) Monday
sukrabaar (11) Friday
sundar (30) beautiful
suninu (25) to be heard
suntalaa (2) tangerine, orange
sutnu (8) to sleep
swayaṃ sewak volunteer
syaau (2) apple

(t)

ta (1) then
taal (2) lake
taalim (30) training
taamaang (39) Tamang
taas (6) playing cards
taato (5) hot
Taauko (12) head
talab (29) salary
tapaaĩko your, yours
Tep (4) tape
Thaaũ (29) place
thaahaa hunu (7) to know
thakaai (30) fatigue
thakaai laagnu (10) to feel tired
Thegaan (23) certain
Thik (6) O. K. allright
thiyo (11) was
terha (11) thirteen
ti (2) those
tibbati (6) TibetTan
Tikaa (25) red mark worn on the forehead
timi (3) you (familiar)
tin (3) three
trikhaa laagnu (10) to feel thristy
tis (9) thirty
tyas din (28) that day
tyaspachhi (9) then
tyati belaa (28) at that time
Turist (16) tourist
tyattikaa (15) as much as that

(u)

u	ɹe	usle (3)	he, she (subject)
uhi (32)	the same, the very one	uso bhae (25)	then, if so
		ustai (29)	just like that
ukaalo (39)	uphill	uThaaunu (34)	to wake up
umaaleko (16)	boiled	uThnu (8)	to get up
usko (3)	his	uttar (18)	north

(w)

wahããko (1)	his, her, hers.

(y)

yahãã (2)	here	yi (2)	these
yasko (28)	its, of this	yo (1)	this

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Sunday	– aaitabaar
Monday	– sombaar
Tuesday	– mangalbaar
Wednesday	– budhabaar
Thursday	– bihibaar
Friday	– shukrabaar
Saturday	– shanibaar

NAMES OF MONTHS

Nepali months vary from 27 to 32 days in length, and any one month may have a different number of days from year to year. Thus no exact correspondence with the western calendar is possible.

baisaakh	– mid-April	to	mid-May
jeTh	– mid-May	to	mid-June
asaar	– mid-June	to	mid-July
saaun	– mid-July	to	mid-August
bhadau	– mid-August	to	mid-September
asoj	– mid-September	to	mid-October
kaattik	– mid-October	to	mid-November
mangsir	– mid-November	to	mid-December
paush, pus	– mid-December	to	mid-January
maagh	– mid-January	to	mid-February
phaagun	– mid-February	to	mid-March
chaitra, chait	– mid-March	to	mid-April

A. LAND AREA

1. Terai

1 bighaa 20 kaTThaa

1 kaTThaa 20 dhur

1 bighaa $1^{2}/_{3}$ acres (approx.)

2/3 hectre (approx.)

2. Hills, Kathmandu

8 ropani 1 acre (approx.)

B. WEIGHTS

1. Terai

1 man	40 ser
1 ser	4 paau
1 paau	4 kanuwaa
1 kanuwaa	5 tolaa
1 man	82 lb. (approx.)
1 ser	2 lb. (approx.)

2. Hills

1 dhaarni	2 bisauli
1 dhaarni	5 lb. (approx.)

3. Kathmandu

1 dhaarni	12 paau
1 dhaarni	5 lb. (approx()

C. VOLUME

1. Terai

1 man 20 kaTThaa (paddy

2. Hills, Kathmandu

1 muri	20 paathi
1 paathi	8 maanaa
1 maanaa	10 muThi
2 maanaa	1 kuruwaa

SPECIAL NUMBERS

1/2 aadhaa

$1^{1}/_{2}$ DeDh, SaaDhe ek

$2^{1}/_{2}$ aDhaai, saaDhe dui

Fractions are read a. follows

5/8 pããchkaa muni aaTh

PARTICLES

WORD	USE	USED AFTER
na	emphatic	imperative
ni	emphatic	verb
	questioning, reminding	noun, pronoun
ta	emphatic	verb
	contrasting	noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb
po	emphatic, contrasting	noun pronoun, adjective, adverb, participle
nai	emphatic	noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb
ki	qeustioning	verb, adjective
ra	doubtfully	verb
	refers to something said/ information from the second, or a third person	all parts of speech
chaahi	emphatic and pausing,	noun, pronoun, adjective,
chaahine	contrasting	adverb

1 –	ek	31 –	ektis
2 –	dui	32 –	battis
3 –	tin	33 –	tettis
4 –	chaar	34 –	chãutis
5 –	pããch	35 –	paitis
6 –	chha	36 –	chhattis
7 –	saat	37 –	saltis
8 –	aaTh	38 –	aThtis
9 –	nau	39 –	unanchaalis
10 –	das	40 –	chaalis
11 –	eghaara	41 –	ekchaalis
12 –	baarha	42 –	bayaalis
13 –	terha	43 –	trichaalis
14 –	chaudha	44 –	chawaalis
15 –	pandhara	45	paltaalis
16 –	sorha	46 –	chayaalis
17 –	satra	47 –	satchaalis
18 –	aThaara	48 –	aThchaalis
19 –	unnais, unis	49 –	unanchaas
20 –	bis	50 –	pachaas
21 –	ekkaais	51 –	ekaaunna
22 –	baais	52 –	baaunna
23 –	teis	53 –	tripanna
24 –	chaubis	54 –	chaunna
25 –	pachchis	55 –	pachpanna
26	chhabbis	56 –	chhapanna
27 –	sattaais	57 –	santaaunna
28 –	aThThaais	58 –	anThaaunna
29 –	unantis, untis	59 –	unansaaThi
30	tis	60 –	saaThi

61 –	eksaThThi	81 –	ekaaasi
62 –	baisaThThi	82 –	bayaasi
63 –	trisaThThi	83 –	triyaasi
64 –	chaũsaThThi	84 –	chauraasi
65 –	paĩsaThThi	85 –	pachaasi
66 –	chhaisaThThi	86 –	chhayaasi
67 –	satsaThThi	87 –	sattaasi
68 –	aThsaThThi	88 –	aThaasi
69 –	unansattari	89 –	unaanabbe
70 –	sattari	90 –	nabbe
71 –	ekahattar	91 –	ekaanabbe
72 –	bahattar	92 –	bayaanabbe
73 –	trihattar	93 –	triyaanabbe
74 –	chauhattar	94 –	chauraanabbe
75 –	pachahattaı	95	panchaanabbe
76 –	chhahattar	96 –	chhayaanabbe
77 –	satahattar	97 –	santaanabbe
78 –	aThahattar	98 –	anThaanabbe
79 –	unaasi	99 –	unaansae
80 –	asi	100 –	sae, saya

1000 — hajaar
10000 — das hajaar
100000 — laakh
1000000 — das laakh

Nepali Numbers

१ २ ३ ४ ५ ६ ७ ८ ९ १०

Ordinal Numbers :

1st	pahilo	19th	unnisaũ
2nd	dosro	20th	bisaũ
3rd	tesro	21st	ekkaaisaũ
4th	chautho	22nd	baaisaũ
5th	paachaũ	23rd	teisaũ
6th	chhaiThaũ	24th	chaubisaũ
7th	saataũ	25th	pachchisaũ
8th	aaThaũ	30th	tisaũ
9th	nawaũ	40th	chaalisaũ
10th	dasaũ	50th	pachaasaũ
11th	eghaaraũ	100th	sayaũ
12th	baaraũ	1000th	hajaaraũ
12th	terhaũ		
14th	chaudhaũ		
15th	pandhraũ		
16th	sorhaũ		
17th	saTraũ		
18th	aThaaraũ		

General Vocabulary

ANIMALS

bat	– chamero	leech	– jukaa
bird	– charaa	mouse/rat	– musaa
dog	– kukur	snake	– sarpa
fish	– maachhaa	tame pig	– sungur
fowl/chicken	– kukhuraa	wild pig	– bãdel
frog	– bhyaagutaa	pig (improved)	– bangur

BODY ACTIVITIES / SENSATIONS

be afraid	– Dar laagnu, – Daraaunu	chew (food, betel)	– chapaaunu
		drink	– piunu, khaanu
be angry	– risaaunu	eat	– khaanu
be asleep	– nidaaunu	go to sleep	– sutnu
be awake	– jaagnu	have a fever	– joro aaunu
be cold	– chiso laagnu	hurt	– dukhnu
be hot	– taato hunu	itch	– chilaaunu
be sleepy	– nidraa laagnu	listen/hear	– sunnu
be tired	– thaaknu, thakaai laagnu	shiver	– kaamnu
		sniff/smell	– sũghnu
bite (piece of food)	– Toknu	suck	– chusnu
		swallow	– nilnu
bleed	– ragat aaunu	sweat/prespire	– pasinaa aaunu
blow (a fire)	– phuknu	wake up	biũjhanu
breathe	– saas phernu	watch, see	– hernu

BODY PARTS

Adam's apple	rudra ghanTi	back	– piThyũ
ankle	goli gããThaa	backbone	– DhaaD
arm	paakhuraa	beard	– daarhi

belly	– peT	heel	kurkuchchha
blood	ragat	jaw	– bangaaro
body hair	– raũ	knee	– ghũDaa
bone	haaD	leg	– khutta
breast	– chhaati	mouth	– mukh
chest	– chhaati	navel	– naaiTo
chin	– chiũDo	neck	– ghããTi
ear	– kaan	nose	– naak
egg	– phul	palm	hatkelaa
elbow	kuhino	rib	– karang
eye	– ããkhaa	shoulder	kããdh
face	– mukh	skin	– chhaalaa
fat	– boso	tail	– puchchhar
feather	pwããkh	tears	– ããsu
finger	– aũlaa	teeth	dããt
finger nail	nang	thigh	– tighraa
flesh meat	– maasu	throat	– ghããTi
foot	– khuTTaa	thumb	buDhi aũlaa
forehead	– nidhaar	toes	– aũlaa
hair (of head)	– kapaal	tongue	– jibro
hand	haat	waist	– kammar
head	– Taauko	wing	– pakheTaa

COLOUR

black	– kaalo	green	hariyo
blue	nilo	light	– ujyaalo
bright	– chahakilo	orange	– suntalaa rang
brown	khairo, kailo	purple	– pyaaji
clean	– saphaa	red	– raato
dark	– ãdhyaaro	white	seto
dirty	phohar	yellow	– pahelo
		colorful	– rangi changi

Description

bad	– naraamro	quickly	– ChhiTo
		quiet (children)	– shaanta
bad/useless (things)	– kharaab/kaam-nalaagne	rotten food	– kuheko, saDeko
		sick	– biraami
cold (water)	– chiso	silent (person)	– nabolne
dry (cloth, wood)	– sukeko	slow	– Dhilo
good/edible (food)	– raamro	soft (call)	– masino (swor)
	– khaana hune	sour	– amilo
good (things)	– asal, kaamlaagne	strong	– baliyo
hard (firm)	– kaDaa, saarho	sweet	– guliyo
		talkative (pers.)	– dherai bolne. kurauTe
hot (water)	– taato		
hot tasting	– piro	tight	– kasieko
bitter	– tito	warm (water)	– taato
loose	– khukulo	weak	– kachchaa
loud (call)	– Thulo		kamjor, nirbaliyo
new (thing)	– nayaa	well	– sancho
noisy (children)	– chakchake	wet (cloth)	– bhijeko

Directions

across	– paari	out	– baahira
along	– saraasar	over	– maathi
away from	TaaDhaa	south	– dakchhin
down	– tala	towards	tira
east	purba	up	– maathi
into	bhitra, amaa	west	– paschim
north	uttar		

Flowers

asters	– godaabari	orchids	– sungaabhaa
bunch	– jhuppaa	rose	– gulaab
dahlia	– laahure phul	sunflower	– suryamukhi
flower	– phul	rhododendron	– gurããs
jasmine	– chameli	marygold	– sayapatri
lily	– kumud	poinsettia	– laalupaate
lotus	– kamal		

Fruits

apple	– syaau	mango	– ããp
apple–pear	– naaspaati	muskmelon	– kharbujaa
apricot	– khurpaani	orange	– junaar
banaana	– keraa	papaya	– mewaa
cashews	– kaaju	peach	– aaru
coconut	– nariwal	peanut	– badaam
custard apple	– sariphaa	persimon	– haluwaabed
date	– chhohoraa	pineapple	– bhuIkaTahar
grape	– angur	plum	aarubakhaDaa
grapefruit	– bhogaTe	pomegranate	– aanaar
guava	– ambaa, belauti	raisin	– kismis, daakh
jackfruit	– rukh kaTahar	tamarind	– amili
lemon/lime (large)	– nibuwaa	tangerine	– suntalaa
lemon/lime (small)	– kaagati	walnut	– okhar
lichi	lichi	watermelon	– tarbujaa

Household Vocabulary

to boil (things)	– usinnu	to baste	– maasuma/tarkaa rimaajhol haalnu
		to beat (eggs, etc)	– pheTnu

to boil (water) – umaalnu
to buy – kinnu
to clean – saphaa garnu
to cook – pakaaunu
to cut up into pieces – Tukraa paarnu
to dust – saphaa garnu
to fry (meat, vegetables) – taarnu
to make the bed – ochhyaan milaaunu
to marinate – molnu
to measure – naapnu
to mix misaaunu
to peel – taachhnu
to prepare – taiyaar garnu
to put – raakhnu
to scrub – maajhnu, ghoTnu
to shake – hallaaunu
to slice Tukraa paarnu
to stew – suruwa pakaaunu
to stir – pheTnu
to sweep saphaa garnu, – baDhaarnu
to throw – phyāāknu
to wash – dhunu, pakhaalnu
almirah – aalmaari, daraaj
ashtray – kharaani daani
bathroom – sauchaalaya
blanket – kambal
building – bhawan
chair – mech, kursi
cold – chiso
corner – kunaa
cotton cloth – suti kapaDaa
courtyard – aagan, chok
cups & saucers pyaalaa ra rikaabi
curtain – pardaa
door – Dhokaa
drainage – Dhal
floor – bhuī
fork – kāāTaa
frying pan – taawaa
garbage – phohor
garden – bagaīchha
hot – taato
house rent bhaaDaa,
kerosene – maTTitel
kettle – kitli, chiyaadaani
knife – chakku
lamp – batti
landlord – gharpati
latch – chheskini,
lid – birko
living-room – baiThak kooThaa
luke warm mantaato
match – salaai
mirror – ainaa
needle – siyo
pillow – takiyaa, siraani
plate thaal

plate (small) – rikaapi
pots & pans – bhããDaa KũDaa
quilt – sirak
room – koThaa
safety pin – huk, khip
scissor – kaĩchi
sheet (bed) – tannaa
spoon – chamchaa
steps – khuDkilaa
stove (kerosene) – isTov
storey talaa
strainer – chhaanne
tap – dhaaraa
toilet – charpi
utensils – bhããDaa kũDaa
wall – bhittaa,parkhaal
waste – kasingar
well – inaar
window – jhyaal
wool (for knitting)– un
woolen cloth – uni kapaDaa

Insects

ant – kamilaa
butterfly – putali
firefly – junkiri
flea upiyãã
fly – jhingaa
grasshopper – phaTengraa
louse – jumraa
mosquito – laamkhuTTe
scorpion – bichchhi
spider – maakuraa

Kinship Terms

beloved – premikaa
bride – dulahi
bride-groom – dulaahaa
brother – bhai
(younger)
brother (elder) daai, daaju
brother's wife – buhaari
(younger)
brother's wife (elder)– bhaauju
brother's son bhatijaa
brother's daughter– bhatiji
caste jaat
close kin – saakhhai
daughter chhoti
daughters' husband– juwaĩ
family pariwaar
father – baa, buwaa

father-in-law – sasuraa
father-in-law's house – sasuraali
father's elder-brother – Thulo baa
father's elder brother's wife– Thuli aamaa
father's younger brother – kaakaa
father's younger brother's wife – kaaki
father's sister – phupu
father's sister's husband– phupaaju
grand-daughter – naatini
grand-father – baaje
grand-mother – bajai
grand-son – naati
guest – paahunaa
husband – logne, srimaan
husband's elder brother – jeThaaju
husband's elder brother's wife – jeThaani
husband's younger brother – dewar
husband's younger brother's wife– deuraani
husband's elder sister – aamaaju
husband's younger sister – nanda
kin – naaatedaar
kinship – naataa
lover – premi
mother – aamaa
mother-in-law – saasu
mother's brother – maamaa
mother's brother's wife – maaiju
mother's sister – saanima
mother's sisters' husband – saanobaa
mother's father – baaje
mother's mother – bajai
sister (elder) – didi
sister (younger) – bahini
sister's husband (elder) – bhinaaju
sister's husband (younger) – juwaai
sister's son – bhaanjaa
sister's daughter – bhaanji
step mother – sauteni aamaa
son – chhoraa
son's wife – buhaari
wife – swaasni, srimati
wife's brother – saalaa
wife's sister – saali

LOCATIONS

back – pachhaaDi
bottom/lower – tallo
corner – kunaa
front – agaaDi
here – yahãã
left – debre, baayãã
middle/center – bichmaa
right – daahine, daayãã
side – chheu
there – tyahãã
top/upper – maathillo

MANIPULATIONS

bend (a stick) – bangyaaunu
bind/tie up – bããdhnu
bore (a hole) – pwaal paarnu
break (rope) – chũDaaunu
build (house) – banaaunu
bury (something) – gaaDnu
butcher (an animal) – maarnu
buy – kinnu
comb (hair) – kornu
count – gannu
cover – Dhaaknu
crush – nichornu
cut (food into pieces) – Tukraa paarnu
cut (rope) – kaaTnu
destroy (house, fence) – bigaarnu
dig (a hole) – khannu
dig up (root, crop) – khannu
discover/find – pattaa lagaaunu
divide/share – bhaag lagaaunu
draw/ sketch – chitra khichhnu
empty out – khaali paarnu
examine – jããchnu
extinguish – nibhaaunu
fight – laDnu, jhagaDaa garnu
fill (a vessel) – bharnu
fold (cloth) – paTyaaunu
hit – haannu, piTnu
hold – samaatnu
hunt – sikaar khelnu
join – missinu, joDnu
kick – laat haannu
kill – maarnu
light(fire, lamp) – baalnu
lose – haraaunu
make – banaaunu
mark – chino lagaaunu

measure – naapnu
mend/repair – bannaaunu
mix – missaaunu
paint – rangaaunu
peel – chhoDaaunu
pick(fruit, beans)– Tipnu
pierce – pwaalpaarnu
pile up – thupaarnu
plant (seed) – ropnu
play (a game) – khelnu
play(beat drum) – bajaaunu
point at – dekhaaunu
pour – khanyaaunu
press – thichnu
pull – taannu
push – dhakelnu
put on (clothes) – lagaaunu
roast – bhuTnu
rub – dalnu
scratch(itchy spot) – kanyaaunu
search for – khojnu
sell – bechnu
sew – siunu
sharpen – tikhaarnu
shoot – goli haannu
show – dekhaaunu
smash (bottle) – phuTaaunu
spread out – phailaaunu
squeeze – nicharnu
sweep (floor) – baDhaarnu
take off (clothes) – phukaalnu
tear – chyaatnu
tie (knot) – bāādhnu
touch/feel – chhunu
try/attempt – kosis garnu
uncover – kholnu
untie – phukaaunu
unwrap – kholnu
wash – dhunu
wear (clothes) lagaaunu
weave (net, bag, mat) – bunnu
weed (a garden) – goDnu
wipe – puchhnu
wrap up – bernu

MANUFACTURED ITEMS

axe – bancharo
basket – Doko, Tokari
boat – Dungaa
charcoal – koilaa
cloth – kapaDaa
comb – kaalyo
cost/price – mol
crack – pwaal, chiraa
door – Dhokaa
drum – maadal
coal – gol
fence – baar
fire – aago
fish net jaal
flame – jwaalaa
floor – bhuī

flute	– bããsuri	post	– khããbo
garden/farm	– bagaĩchaa	road/path/trail	– baaTo
ground oven	– chulho	roof	– chhaanaa
hole	– pwaal	rope	– Dori
hook (for fishing)	– balchhi	salt	– nun
house	– ghar	shelter/bush hut	– Taharo
knife	– chakku	sleeping mat	– Dasnaa
knot (in rope)	– gããTho	smoke	– dhuwãã
line/mark	– chino	soot	– dhwããso
mat	– gundri	steps/stairs/ladder	– bhãryaang
money	– paisaa	thread	– dhaago
necklace	– haar, maalaa	trap (for birds, animals)	– khor, dharaap paaso
needle	– siyo		
nest	– gũD	village	– gaaũ
ornament	– gahanaa	wages/pay	– jyaalaa, talab
oil	tel	wall	– parkhaal
plate	– thaal	white ash	– kharaani
point	– bindu	window	– jhyaal
pole/stake	– khããbo	wound	– ghaau

Motions

come	– aaunu	hide (oneself)	– luknu
dance	naachnu	jump (across/up)	– uphranu
depart/go away	– jaanu	miss (a target)	– nalaagnu
fall	khasnu	return/come back	– pharkanu
flee/run away	– bhaagnu	run	– dagurnu
flow	– bagnu	swim	– pauDi khelnu
fly	– uDnu	turn	– pharkanu
go	– jaanu	walk	– hiDnu

MOVING ACTIONS

bring	– lyaaunu	pick up	– uThaaunu
carry on (arms,		put (down)	– raakhnu
shoulder etc.)	– boknu	arise/lift up	– uThaaunu
catch	– samaatnu	remove	– haTaaunu
close/shut	– banda garnu	send	– paThaaunu
drag	– Taannu	shake	– hallaaunu
drop(something)	– khasaalnu	steal	– chornu
fetch (go & bring)	– lyaaunu	take	– linu
hide (something)	– lukaannu	take (there)	– lagnu
lead	– lagnu	throw (away)	– phyāāknu
leave behind	– pachaaDi chhodDnu	turn (something around, over)	– palTaaunu
meet	– bheTnu	twist (thread)	– baTaarnu
open	– kholnu		

NATURAL OBJECTS

bank (of river)	– kinaaar	river	– nadi
cloud	– baadal	sea	– samudra
dust	– dhulo	shade	– chhahaari
flood	– baaDhi	shadow	– chhaayaa
fog	– kuiro	sky	– aakaash
ground	– jamin	spring (of water)	mul
hill	– DāāDaa	star	– taaraa
lake	– taal	stone	– Dhungaa
moon	– chandramaa, jun	stream	– kholaa
mountain	– pahaaD	sun	– surya, ghaam
mud	– hilo	valley	– besi, upatyakaa
ocean	– mahaasaagar	water	– paani
plain	– samma	wind	– haawaa
rain	– paani, barshaa		

OCCUPATIONS

barber	– naau, hajaam	mason	– Dakarmi
blacksmith	– kaami	officer	– aphisar, adhikaari
broker	– dalaal		
businessman	– byaapaari	postman	– hulaaki
butcher	– kasaai, bagare	potter	– kumhaale
carpenter	– sikarmi	servant	– nokar
clerk	– kaarindaa	shopkeeper	– pasale
cloth merchant	– kapadaa pasale	singer	– gaayak
cobbler	– saarki	soldier	– sipaahi
contractor	– Thekedaar	spy	– jaasus
cook	– bhaanse	student	– vidyaarthi
editor	– sampaadak	sweeper	– baDhaarne maanchhe
gardener	– maali		
goldsmith	– sunaar	teacher	– sikchhak
laborer	– jyaami	washerman	– dhobi
lawyer	– wakil	writer	– lekhak
magician	– jaadugar		

ORAL ACTIVITIES

bark (dog)	– bhuknu	scream	– chichchyaaunu
belch	– Dakaarnu	shout	– karaaunu
call out	– bolaaunu	sing	– git gaaunu
cough	– khoknu	smile	– muskuraaunu
crow (rooster)	– baasnu	sneeze	–haachchhiũ garnu
cry/weep	– runu	snore	– ghurnu
hiccup	– hikka aaunu	speak	– bolnu
hum	– gungunaaunu	spit	– thuknu
laugh	– hããsnu	whisper	– saauti garnu
repeat	– dohoryaaunu	whistle	– suselnu
reply	– jawaaph dinu	yawn	– haai garnu

Persons

baby	– bachchaa	old woman	– buDhi
boy	– KeTaa	woman	– swaasni maanchhe, aaimai
girl	– keTi		
man	– maanchhe	young man	– tanderi
old man	– buDho	young woman	– taruni

Plants

bamboo	– bããs	leaf	– paat
banaana	– keraa	leaf vegetable	– saagpaat
bark (of tree)	– bokraa	mushrooms	– chyaau
beans	– simi, bhaTmaas	roots	– jaraa
branch	– hããgaa	seed	– biu
bush/shrub	– jhaaDi	stick	– laTThi
coconut	– nariwal	sugar cane	– ukhu
corn	– makai	sweet potato	– sakhar khanDa
flower	– phul	taro	– pIDaalu
forest/woods	– ban	tobacco leaf	– surti
grass	– ghããs	tree	– rukh
ground	– jamin	trunk	– phed

Positions

above	– maathi	in/inside	bhitra
behind	– pachhaaDi	near	– najik
beside	– chheumaa	on	– maa, maathi
between	– bichmaa	outside	– baahiraa
far from	– TaaDhaa	under/below	– tala, muni
in front of	– agaaDi		

POSTURES

be seated	– basi raakhnu	rise/get up	– uThnu
be standing	– uThi raakhnu	sit down	– basnu
bend over	– jhuknu	stand up	– uThnu
lie down	– palTanu	wait	– parkhanu
rest	– aaraam garnu		

QUANTITIES

all	– sabai	many	– dherai
empty	– khaali	piece	– bhaag, Tukraa
few	– thorai	some	– kehi, thorai
full	– bhari	whole	– sabai, jammai
half	– aadhaa		

SHAPES

croocked	– baango	smooth	– chillo
hollow	– khokro	solid	– bharilo, khãdilo
rough (surface)	– khasro	straight	– sojho, sidhaa
round	– golo		

SIZE

big	– Thulo	small	– saano
long	– laamo	tall/high	– aglo
narrow	– sããguro	thick (cloth)	– baaklo
short	– chhoTo	thin (cloth)	– paatalo
short/low	– hocho, chhoTo	wide	– pharaakilo

SPICES – MASALAA, HERB, ETC.

all spice	– battis masalaa	butter	– makhan
anise	– sõph	cheese	– chij
bay leaf	– tej paat	ghee	– ghiu
cardamon	– sukumel	kerosene	– maTTitel
chilli	– khursaani	mustard oil	– toritel
cinnamon	– daalchini	oil	– tel
cloves	– lwaang	seasame oil	– tilko tel
coriander	– dhaniyaa	sugar (white)	– chini
cumin seed	– jiraa	sugar (brown)	– sakkhar
curry powder	– baara masalaa	cream of wheat	– suji
fenugreek	– methi	flour (corn)	– makaiko piTho
garlic	– lasun	flour (rice)	– chaamalko piTho
ginger	– aduwa	wheat flour (wheat)	– maidaa, ããTaa
mint	– pudinaa	rice (beaten)	– chiuraa
nutmeg	– jaaiphal	rice (unocooked)	– chaamal
parsley	– jwaanu	rice (cooked)	– bhaat
pepper	– marich	rice (unhusked)	– dhaan
saffron	– keshar		
salt	– nun		
seasame	– til		
tumeric	– besaar		

SPONTANIOUS EVENTS

blow (wind)	– haawaa bahanu	dry out	– sukaaunu, suknu
burn(wood, fire)	– balnu	fall (rain)	– paani parnu
die	– marnu	melt	– paglanu
dissolve	– galnu	swell	– suninu

asparagus	– kurilo	mustard	– tori
beans	– simi	okra	– raamtoriyaa
beets	– chukandar	onion	– pyaaj
broccoli	– barkaauli	peas	– keraau
cabbage	– bandaa kobi	pepper, chilli	– khursaani
carrots	– gaajar	bell pepper	– bhēDe khursaani
cauliflower	kaauli	potato	– aalu
chives	– chhyaapi	pumpkin	– pharsi
corn	– makai	radish	– mulaa
cucumber	– kãākro	snake gourd	– chichinDo
eggplant	– bhaanTaa	soyabean	– bhaTmaas
kohlrabi	– gyããTh kobi	spinach	– saag
lentils	– daal	squash	– iskush
black lentils	– kaalo daal	sweet potato	– sakhar khanDa
red lentils	– musurko daal	taro	– pīDaalu
yellow lentils	– raharko daal	tomato	– golbhēDaa
lettuce	– jiriko saag	turnip	– salgam
lima bean	– Thulo simi		

Verb 'hunu' to be at (present)

Example: ma nepaalmaa chhu – I am in Nepal.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	chhu	chhaina
tã	chhas	chhainas
u	chha	chhaina
hami (haru)	chhaũ	chhainaũ
timi (haru)	chhau	chhainau
uniharu	chhan	chhainan
tapaaĩ (haru)	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

Verb 'hunu' to be (present)

Example: ma bidyarthi hũ– I am a student.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	hũ	hoina
tã	hos	hoinas
u	ho	hoina
haami (haru)	haũ	hoinaũ
timi (haru)	hau	hoinau
uniharu	hun	hoinan
tapaaĩ (haru)	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

Verb 'hunu' to be (past)

Example: ma hijo pokharaamaa thiẽ – I was in Pokhara yesterday.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	thiẽ	thiina
tã	thiis	thiinas
u	thiyo	thiena
haami (haru)	thiyaũ	thienaũ
timi (haru)	thiyau	thienau
uniharu	thie	thienan
tapaaĩ (haru)	hunuhunthyo	hunuhunnathyo

Simple Present

Example: ma jaanchhu– I go.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanchhu	jaanna, jããdina
tã	jaanchhas	jããdainas
u	jaanchha	jããdaina
haami (haru)	jaanchhaũ	jaannaũ, jããdainaũ
timi (haru)	jaanchhau	jaannau, jããdainau
uniharu	jaanchhan	jããdainan, jaannan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanuhunchha	januhunna

Present Progressive

Exapmple: ma jããdai chhu – I am going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NETATIVE*
ma	jããdai chhu	jããdai chhaina
tã	jããdai chhas	jããdai chhainas
u	jããdai chha	jããdai chhaina
haami (haru)	jããdai chhaũ	jããdai chhainau
timi (haru)	jããdai chhau	jããdai chhainau
uniharu	jããdai chhan	jããdai chhainan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jããdai hunhunchha	jããdai hunuhunna

*Although you will sometimes hear this form, the alternative negative form of the progressive tense, is more common. (ma gairaheko chhaina– I am not going.

Present Perfect

Example: ma gaeko chhu–I have gone.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko chhu	gaeko chhaina
tã	gaeko chhas	gaeko chhainas
u	gaeko chha	gaeko chhaina
haami (haru)	gaekaa chhaũ	gaekaa chhainaũ
timi (haru)	gaekaa chhau	gaekaa chhaainau
uniharu	gaekaa chhaan	gaekaa chhainan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanu bhaeko chha	jaanu bhaeko chhaina

Present Progressive (Alternative Form)

Example: ma gairaheko chhu– I am going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gairaheko chhu	gairaheko chhaina
tã	gairaheko chhas	gairaheko chhainas
u	gairaheko chha	gairaheko chhaina
haami (haru)	gairahekaa chhaũ	gairahekaa chhainaũ
timi	gairahekaa chhau	gairahekaa chhainau
uniharu	gairahekaa chhan	gairahekaa chhainan
tapaaĩ (haru)	gairahanu bhaeko chha	gairahanu bhaeko chhaina

Simple Past: Intransitive Verb

Example: ma gaẽ– I went.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaẽ	gaina
tã	gais	gainas
u	gayo	gaena
haami (harũ)	gayaũ	gaenaũ
timi (haru)	gayau	gaenau
uniharu	gae	gaenan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanubhayo	jaanubhaena

Simple Past: Transitive Verb

Example: maile bhaat khaaẽ– I ate rice.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
maile	khaaẽ	khaaina
taĩle	khaais	khaainas
usle	khaayo	khaaena
haami (haru) le	khaayaũ	khaaenaũ
timi (haru) le	khaayau	khaaenau
uniharule	khaae	khaaenan
tapaaĩ (haru) le	khaanubhayo	khaanubhaena

Past Progressive

Example: ma jããdai theiẽ – I was going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jããdai thiẽ	jããdai thiina
tã	jããdai thiis	jããdai thiinas
u	jããdai thiyo	jããdai th na
haami (haru)	jããdai thiyaũ	jããdai thienaũ
timi (haru)	jããdai thiyau	jããdai thienau
uniharu	jããdai thie	jããdai thienan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jããdai hunuhunthyo	jããdai hunuhunnathyo

Past Perfect

Example: ma gaeko thiẽ- I had gone.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko thiẽ	gaeko thiina
tã	gaeko thiis	gaeko thiinas
u	gaeko thiyo	gaeko thiena
haami (haru)	gaekaa thiyaũ	gaekaa thienaũ
timi (haru)	gaekaa thiyau	gaekaa thienau
uniharu	gaekaa thie	gaekaa thienan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanu bhaeko thiyo	jaanu bhaeko thiena

Past Habitual

Example: I used to go–ma jaanthẽ.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanthẽ	jaannathẽ
tã	jaanthis	jaannathis
u	jaanthyo	jaannathyo
haami (haru)	jaanthyaũ	jaannathyaũ
timi (haru)	jaanthyau	jaannathyau
uniharu	jaanthe	jaannathe
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanuhunthyo	jaanuhunnathyo

Unknown Past

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaechhu	gainachhu
tã	gaichhas	gainachhas
u	gaechha	gaenachha
haami (haru)	gaechhaũ	gaenachhaũ
timi (haru)	gaechhau	gaenachhau
uniharu	gaechhan	gaenachhan
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanu bhaechha	jaanu bhaenachha

Impertative

ma	jaaũ
tã	jaa
u	jaawos
haami (haru)	jaawaũ
timi (haru)	jaau
uniharu	jaaun
tapaaĩ (haru)	jaanus, jaanuhos, jaanos

Future Indefinite

Example: ma jaancchhu– I'll go.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanechhu	jaanechhaina
tã	jaanechhas	jaanechhainas
u	jaanechha	jaanechhaina
haami (haru)	jaanechhaũ	jaanechhainaũ
timi (haru)	jaanechhau	jaanechhainau
uniharu	jaanechhan	jaanechhainan
tapaaI (haru)	jaanu hunechha	jaanu hunechhaina

Future Condition

Example: ma jaaũlaa– I'll go.

ma	jaaũlaa
tã	jaalaas
u	jaalaa
haami(haru)	jaawaũlaa
timi (haru)	jaawaulaa
uniharu	jaalaan
tapaaI (haru)	jaanuholaa

Reading and Writing Section

Writing System

Nepali, like Hindi and Sanskrit, is written in the Devanagari script. It consists of (1) vowels (2) consonats and (3) half letters (conjuncts).

(1) Vowels

Nepali has two kinds of vowels.

a. Vowel characters: These are used

(i) in the beginning of a word, Ex. aaja – today

(ii) after other vowels aau – come

b. Vowel signs: These are used after consonants.

Ex. maathi – above

(2) Consonants

Each Nepali consonant has an inherent vowel 'a' in it. So when a consonant is recited each is pronounced as though it were followed by the '*a*' sound.

(3) Half letters (Conjuncts)

Most Nepali consonant characters have their half forms.

(4) The use of halant (्)

This mark halant is attached to the foot of a consonant to cancel the inherent vowel in the letter. Its use is generally confined to verbal forms. Examples–

आउनुस् — aaunus

जानुस् — jaanus

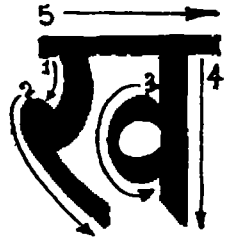
ह्वस् — hawas

छन् — chhan

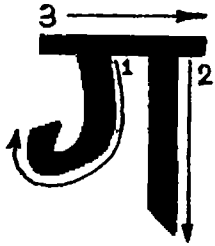
Below are given the Nepali vowels and consonants with arrows showing the most accepted way of drawing them. Alongside most letters is given an English word or words with one or two underlined letters whose pronunciation closely approximates the pronunciation of the Nepali letter.

SCOT
SKIN

K



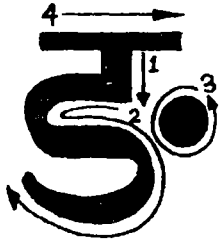
KH
ASPIRATED FORM OF K



GIVE
GO

G

GH
ASPIRATED FORM OF G



SING

NG

PITCH

CH

CHH

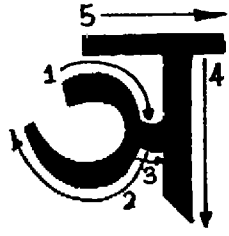
ASPIRATED FORM OF CH

JUMP

J

JH

ASPIRATED FORM OF J

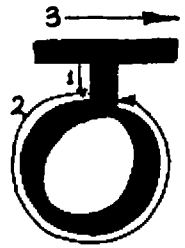


YOUNG

N

BETTER

T



TH

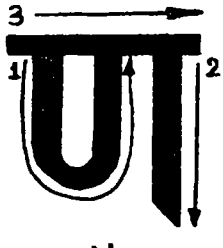
ASPIRATED FORM OF T

DAY

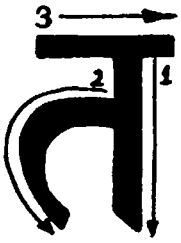
D

DH

ASPIRATED FORM OF D

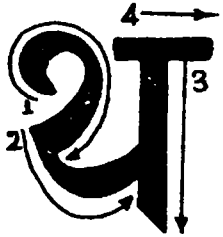


N



T

DENTAL T

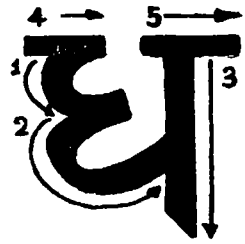


TH

THORN

D

THEY



DH

ASPIRATED FORM OF D

N

NAME

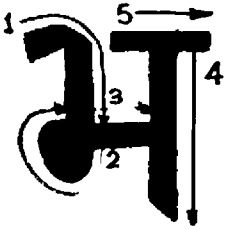
PAY
SPIN

P

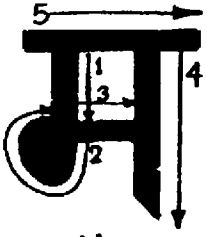
PH
ASPIRATED FORM OF P

BAY
ROB

B



BH
ASPIRATED FORM OF B

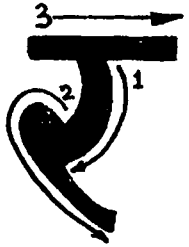


MONEY

M

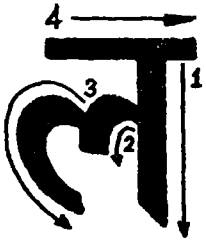
YES

Y



RED

R



LED

L

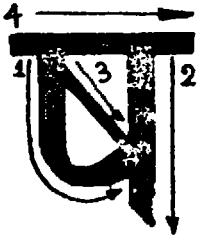
WAS

W

SOUP

SAD

SH

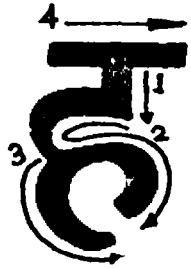


SOUP
SAD

SH

SOUP
SAD

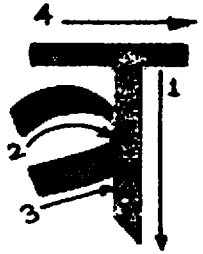
S



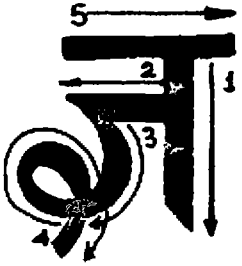
HALL
HILL

H

KSH



T+R = TR



G+YN = GYN

ABOUT
AGO

A

FATHER

AA

SIT
PIN

I

SIT
PIN
BIN

I

BOOK
PUT

U

BOOK
PUT

U

RED
GET

E

A+I = AI

HOLY

O

SEWED

A+U + AU

SUNG

ANG

NEPALI ALPHABET

VOWEL CHARACTERS

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ	ऋ
a	aa	i	i	u	u	e	ai	o	au	ri

VOWEL SIGNS

–	ा	ि	ी	ु	ू	े	ै	ो	ौ

ब+Signs.

ब	बा	बि	बी	बु	बू	बे	बै	बो	बौ
ba	baa	bi	bi	bu	bu	be	bai	bo	bau

CONSONANTS.	Unvoiced Unaspirated	Unvoiced Aspirated	Voiced Unaspirated	Voiced Aspirated	Nasal
Velar					
	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	k	kh	g	gh	n
Palatal					
	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	ch	chh	j	jh	n
Retroflex					
	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	T	Th	D	Dh	n
Dental					
	त	थ	द	ध	न
	t	th	ḏ	dh	n
Labial					
	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	P	Ph	b	bh	m
Semivowels					
	य	र	ल	व	
	y	r	l	w	
Sibilants					
	श	ष	स		
	sh	sh	s		
Glottal Fricative					
	ह				
	h				

Consonant characters

क	ल	म	न	स
k	l	m	n	s

Vowel characters

अ	आ	इ	ई
a	aa	i	i

Vowel Signs

ा	ि	ी
aa	i	i

Words

कलम	कमल	असल	कल
आमा	नाम	साझान	काम
मसला	किन	सीमाना	मीना
मलाई	हलम	मानिस	साइकल

Consonant characters

ख	त	प	र
kh	t	p	r

Vowel characters

उ	ऊ
u	u

Vowel Signs

ु	ू
u	u

Words					
	खाउ	खाम	खालो	नखाउ	पसल
	तर	तिमी	तिनी	तेल	तास
	पानी	पात	पान	पुस	पिर
	राती	राम	रिस	राई	अमेरिका
	नेपाल	रीता	खतम	सात	सरल
	सुत	रूख	मुला	कुरा	सुन

Note — Vowel Signs ु (u) ू (u) are joined differently with the consonant character र (r)

र रू – रूमाल

Step Three

Consonant characters

घ	ज	ट	द	ब
gh	j	T	d	b

Vowel characters

ए	ओ
e	o

Vowel Signs

े	ो
e	o

Words

घर	जाउ	माघ	घाम
आउ	जात	जना	जुन
टाउको	पेट	काट	जति
बाइ	देउ	दुइ	दिशा
दोलखा	दिन	दाल	पोखरा
बस	बा	बाजे	बाट
अबेला	एघार	ओरालो	बाटा

Sentences

म अमेरिका जाने ।

तिमी के खाने ? म पानो खाने ।

को बजार जाने ? राम बजार जाने ।

तिमीले के खाएको ? मासु खाएको ।

Consonant characters

ग	च	ड	थ	य
g	ch	D	th	y

Vowel characters

ऐ
ai

Vowel Signs

ai

Words

गाई	गते	गीत	गुरू
चिया	चिसो	चामल	चैत
डेरा	डर	चाड	घडी
थाल	कथा	थकाई	थोरै
यो	ऐना	यता	गयो

Sentences

गाई	बारीमा	गयो ।
मलाई	यो	किताब देउ ।
पानो	तातो	छ ।
चोया	मोठो	छैन ।
मैले	खाना	खाएको छैन ।

Consonant characters

chh	Th	ph	h
छ	ठ	फ	ह

Vowel Characters

औ
au

Vowel Sign

ौ
au

Words

छन	छाता	पछाडि	छोरो
टिक	काठ	कोठा	बाठो
फेरो	फोहर	सफा	फुल
हामी	हिमाल	हजुर	होचो
औलो	औसत	औकात	औपचारिक

Sentences

माइकको घर अमेरिका हो । दुइ महिना अगि उ नेपाल आया । उ हिजो वसमा पोखरा गयो । पोखरा धेरै रमाइलो छ । पोखरामा ताल र नदी छन् । म पनि भोलि पोखरा जानें । तिमी कहिले जाने नी ?

Consonant characters

झ	ढ	ध	भ	व
jh	Dh	dh	bh	w

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

न + छ = न्छ

त + छ = त्छ

स + छ = स्छ

Words

झोला	भरना	ढीलो	टाढा
धारो	दूध	भाइ	भोलि
कतिवटा	वजन	वकील	यहाँ
खन्छ	मन्छ	सुत्छु	बस्छौं

Sentences

तिमी	भोली	कस्को	घरमा	जान्छौं।
सुन्तला	कस्तो	छ ?	गुलियो	छ।
उस्को	आमा	वन्दीपुरमा	बस्नु	हुन्छ।

नेपाली भन्दा हिन्दी धेरै मानिस बोल्छन् ।

Consonant characters

ङ	ञ	ण	श	ष
ng	ya	na	sh	sh

Nasal modifiers ँ (अँ ã) ं (ईं I)

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ल	+	प	=	ल्प
क	+	छ	=	क्छ
ख	+	न	=	ख्न
ब	+	द	=	ब्द

Words

भाङ	विरुवा	शरीर	शहर
षोडशो	विष	पाल्पा	सक्छ
शान्ति	शनिवार	सुब्बा	भाषा

Sentences

पाल्पाबाट हिमालय देखिन्छ ।
शान्ति शनिवार मन्दिरमा जान्छे
रक्सी भन्दा जाँड सस्तो हुन्छ ।
किताब झोलाबाट झिक्नुस् र पढ्न थाल्नुस् ।
तपाईंलाई कतिवटा नेपाली शब्द आउँछन् ?

Consonant characters

क्ष	त्र	ज्ञ
ksh	tr	gyn

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

च + च = च्च

ग + य = ग्य

म + म = म्म

ज + य = ज्य

ए + त = प्त

Words

कक्षा	क्षत्री	मात्रै	ज्ञान
भाग्य	सम्म	ज्याला	हप्ता
कच्चा	जम्मा	बच्चा	नत्रभने

Sentences

मेरो छोरी चार कक्षामा छे ।

उस्को जात क्षत्रो हो ।

उस्को उमेर सत्र मात्रै भयो ।

मलाई विज्ञान सजिलो लाग्यो ।

पोखरावाट पाल्पासम्म हिड्ेर जान एक हप्ता लाग्छ ।

भरियाले एक दिनको ज्याला कति लियो ?

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

त	+	त	=	त्त
न	+	न	=	न्न
ट	+	ट	=	ट्ट
क	+	क	=	क्क
ड	+	ड	=	ड्ड
क	+	त	=	क्त

Words

सत्तरी	उन्नाइस	ठट्टा	पक्का
अड्डा	भक्त	छपन्न	चौपट्ट

Sentences

यो किताब सबभन्दा पहिले उन्नाइस सय चौहत्तरमा छापेको हो ।

यो कुरा पक्का हो कि ठट्टा मात्र हो ?

अफिसलाई नेपालीमा अड्डा भनिन्छ ।

उस्को नाम भक्तलाल हो ।

Half letters (Conjuncts)

घ + घ = घ्घ

ण + ट = ण्ट

झ + य = झ्य

फ + न = फ्न

Words

सुघ्घर	घण्टा	भाण्टा	झ्याल
आफ्नो	फ्याउरो	काठभाण्डू	फ्याक्नुस्

Sentences

मेरो कोठा सफा सुघ्घर छ ।

यहाँबाट स्वयम्भू पुग्न एक घण्टा लाग्छ ।

मेरो झ्यालबाट हिमाल देखिन्छ ।

तिमि आफ्नो किताब एढ ।

भाण्टा एक किसिमको तरकारी हो ।

Step Eleven

Half letters (Conjuncts)

क + र = क्र

ट + ठ = ट्ठ

र + छ = र्छ

म + र = म्र

र + ह = र्‍ह

द + र = द्र

Words

गर्छ	राम्रो	सोन्ह	कृष्ण
बान्ह	इन्द्र	पन्ध्र	दृश्य
चिट्ठी	काँक्रो	प्रधान	सान्है

Sentences

आज मेरो केटो साथीको चिट्ठी आयो।

उस्लाई काँक्रो मन पर्दैन।

नेपाल राम्रो र रमाइलो देश हो।

एक जोर चप्पलको सोह्र रूपियाँ पर्छ।

बन्दीपुरबाट धेरै राम्रो दृश्य देखिन्छ।

Half–letters (Conjuncts)

द + व = द्व

ध + द = ध्द

द + म = द्म

द + य = द्य

स + ल = स्ल

क्ष + ण = क्ष्ण

ट + य = ट्य

Words

पद्धति पद्म पद्मिनी

पद्य सिल्लो तीक्ष्ण

फटघाङ्ग्रा द्वार द्वापर

Sentences

उस्को नाम पद्म हो ।

मलाई गद्य भन्दा पद्य मन पर्छ ।

कस्तो सिल्लो रहेछ ?

फटघाङ्ग्रा उफ्रिदै छ ।

ढोकालाई संस्कृतमा द्वार भन्छन् ।

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

क्ष + य = क्ष्य

श + य = श्य

ष + ण = ष्ण

ञ + ज = ञ्ज

ङ + ग = ङ्ग

श + र + ई = श्री

न + थ + य = न्थ्य

Words

श्याम	विष्ण	भाञ्जा	लक्ष्य
विश्व	चङ्गा	श्रीमान	हुन्थ्यो
लक्ष्मण	भाञ्जी	दङ्ग	

Sentences

श्याम विष्ण को भाञ्जा हो ।

मेरो लक्ष्य डाक्टर हुनु हो ।

अमेरिकामा म गाईको मासु खान्थें ।

सरिताको श्रीमान साह्रै राम्रो सितार बजाउँ-न् ।

Step Fourteen

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ट + न = ट्न

ढ + छ = ढ्छ

ड + छ = ड्छ

छ + य = छ्य

Words

काट्छ साट्छ पढ्छ ढाँट्छ

बम्छयौ पड्काउनुभयो हिंड्छ

Sentences

तिम्रो कोट मेरोसित साट्छौ त ?

हाम्रो भाइ विश्व विद्यालयमा पढ्छ ।

यसपाली तीहारमा पटका पड्काउनु भयो त ?

हात्ति मन्दा बाघ छिटो हिंड्छ ।

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ड् + र = ड्र

ह् + य = ह्य

ढ् + थ + य = ढ्थ्य

त् + थ + य = त्थ्य

र् + थ + य = र्थ्य

ङ् + ग + य = ङ्ग्य

च् + च + य = च्च्य

र् + ह् + ल + य + ह्ल्र्य

Words

ड्रम, ह्याँकुलो, पढ्थ्यो, ओह्लर्यो
समाह्थ्यो, गर्थ्यो, ब्यंग्य, घच्च्याउनु

Sentences

ड्रममा मट्टितेल छ कि छैन ?

मलाई नघच्च्याउ न ।

मदन तल ओह्लर्यो कि ओह्लेंघको छैन ।

तिमी बेलायतमा के काम गर्थ्यौ ?

उ अमेरिकामा हुँदा निकै सिनेमा हेर्थ्यो ।

REFERENCES

1. Clark, T. W. — Introduction to Nepali
2. Dhungel, Tulsi Prasad — Nepali Rachana Shilpa
3. Hall, Eugene J. & Flamm, Carol S. — Orientation in American English
4. Pandey, Gopal — Rachana Keshar
5. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Prayogatmak Bhashatatwa
6. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Ramro Rachana Mitho Nepali
7. Pokhrel, Bal Krishna — Nepali Bhasha ra Sahitya
8. Pradhan, Pras Mani — Nepali Byakaran
7. Regmi, Chudamani Upadhyaya — Nepali Bhashako Utpatti
10. Risal, Bishnu Gopal & Shiva Gopal — Nepali Bhasha ra Byakaran
11. Sapkota, Mahanan da — Dhwaniko Dhanda
12. Sharma, Bal Chandra — Nepali Shabdakosh
13. Sharma, Somnath — Madhya Chandrika
14. Shrivastava, Dayananda — Nepali Language : Its History & Development
15. Turner, R. L. — A Comparative & Etymological Dictionary of the Nepali Language

Published by the Authors
Copyright: The Authors

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any means without permission in writing from the authors.

Revised and Enlarged Edition 2000 copies
Price Rs. 120.00
1988

Printed in Nepal at Jore Ganesh Press Pvt.Ltd.,
Balaju, Kathmandu. Phone: 4—13437